

LIBERTY

ABRIDGED
HISTORY OF THE
UNITED STATES

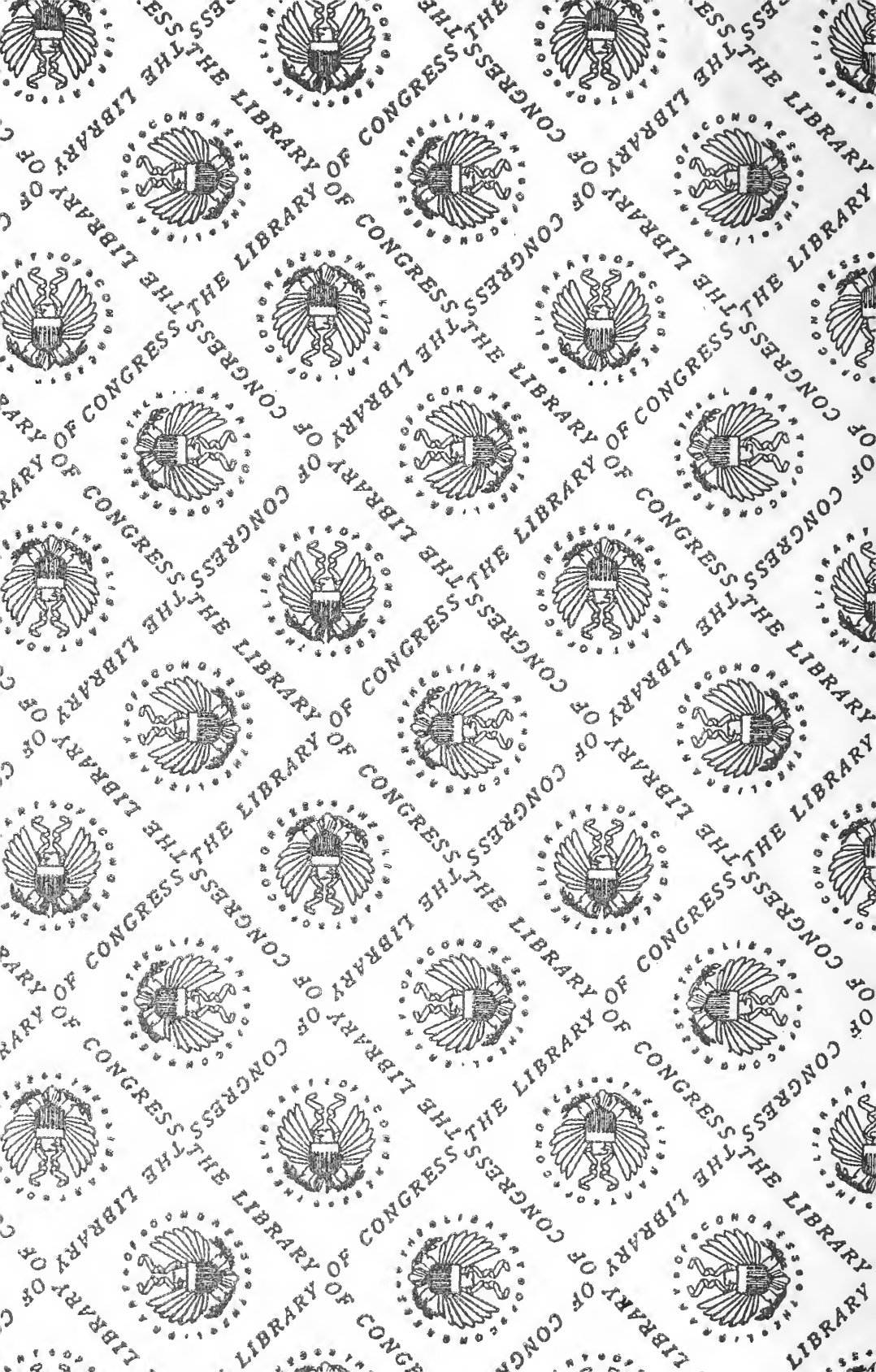


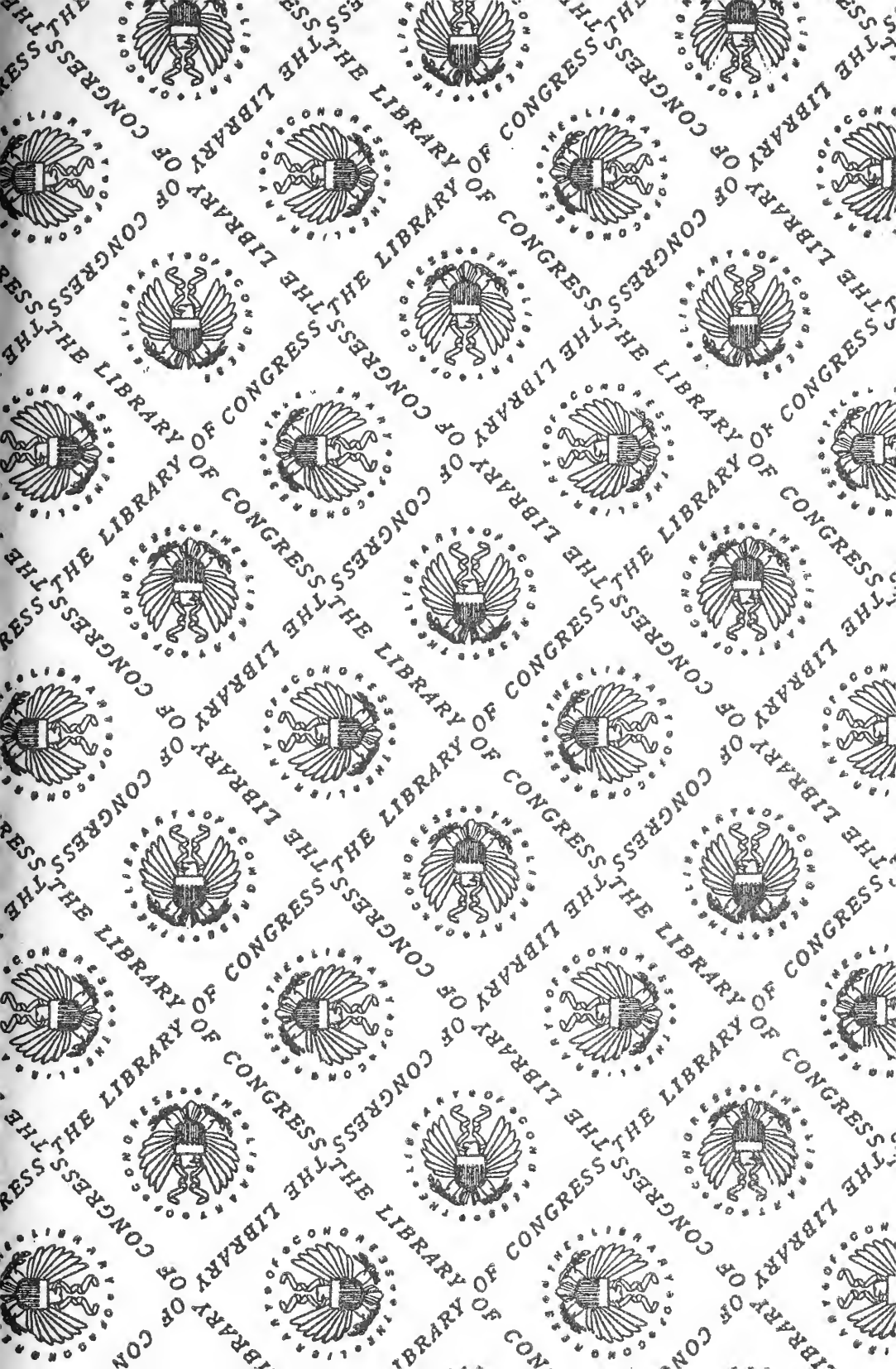
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



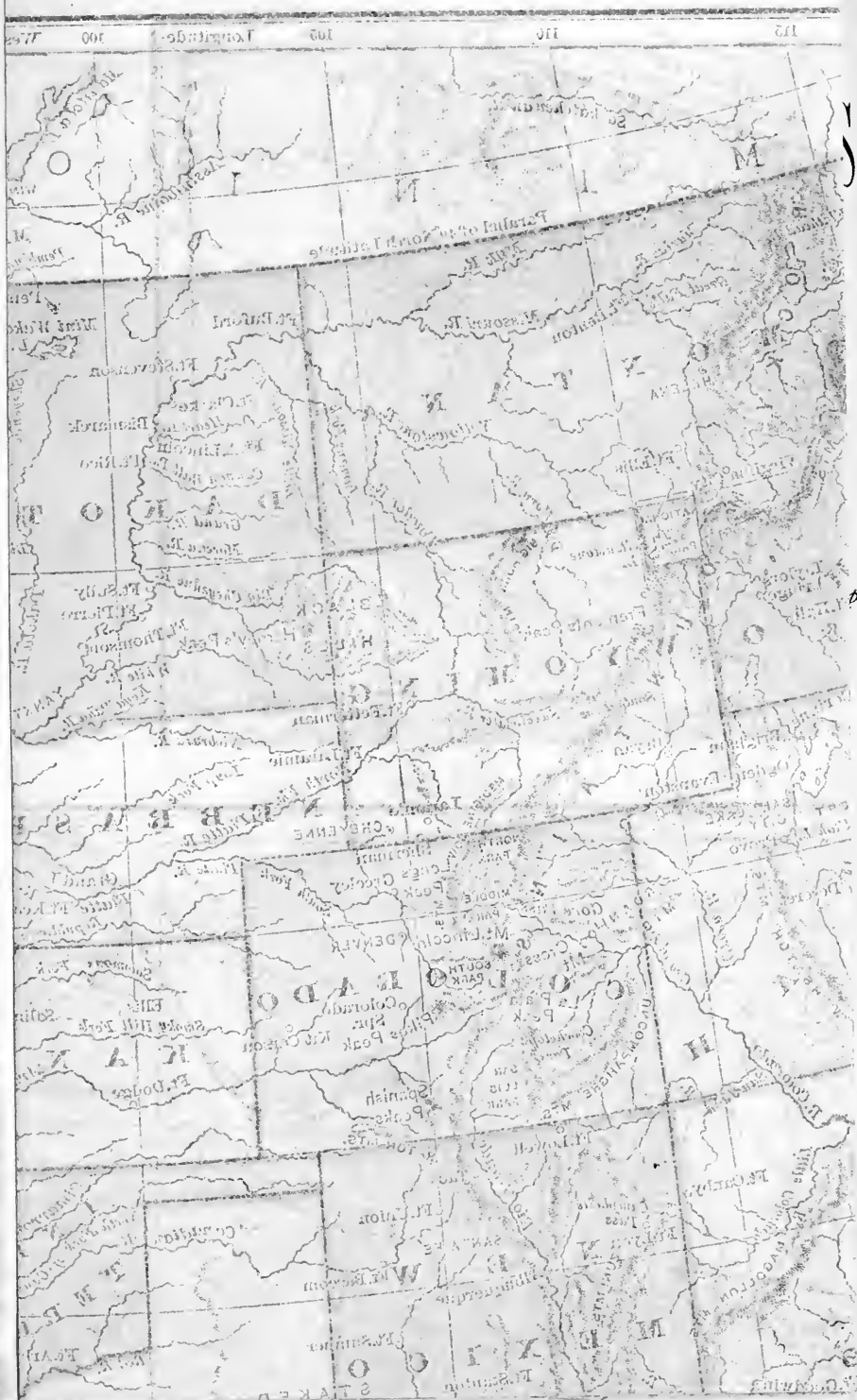
00003272497

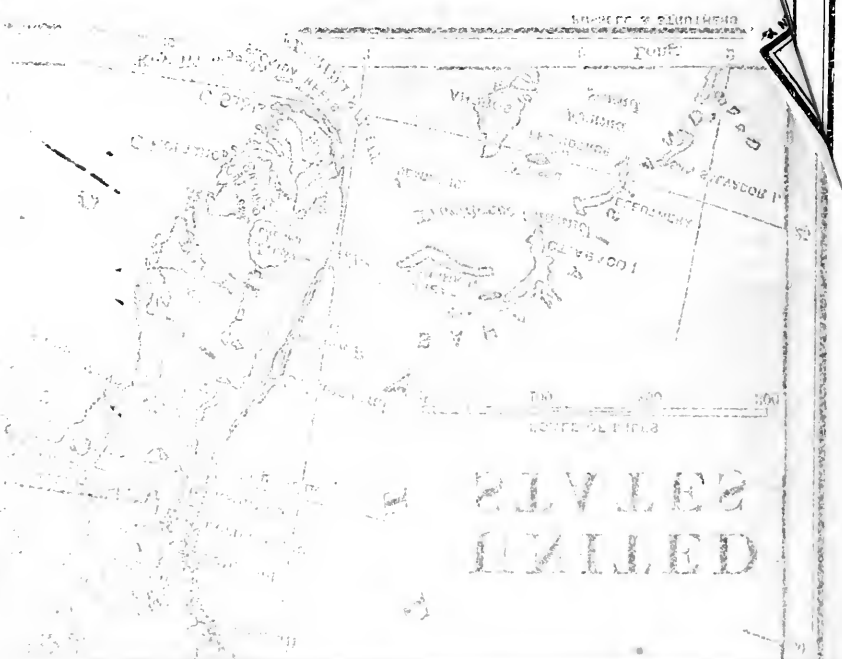
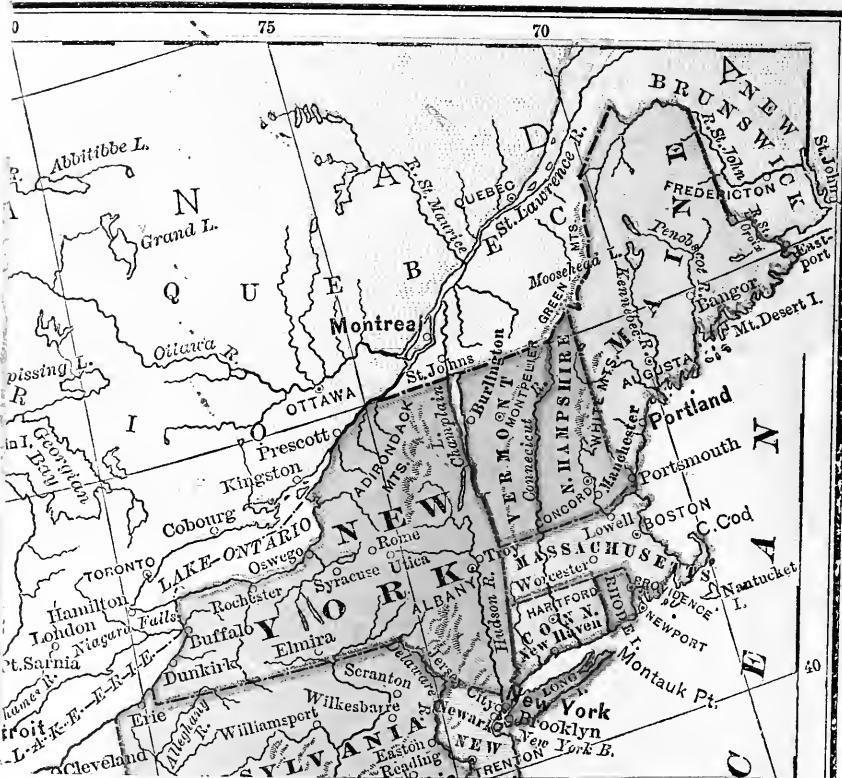












21V1E2
11V1E2

AN ABRIDGED
HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

✓ BY

JOHN R. G. HASSARD, LL.D.,

Author of "A History of the United States of America," "Life of Archbishop Hughes," "Life of Pius IX.," Etc.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION

BY THE

RIGHT REV. J. L. SPALDING, D.D.,

Bishop of Peoria.



NEW YORK :
THE CATHOLIC PUBLICATION SOCIETY CO.,
9 BARCLAY STREET.



AN ABRIDGED
HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

✓
BY

JOHN R. G. HASSARD, LL.D.,

Author of "A History of the United States of America," "Life of Archbishop Hughes," "Life of Pius IX.," Etc.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION

BY THE

RIGHT REV. J. L. SPALDING, D.D.,

Bishop of Peoria.



NEW YORK :
THE CATHOLIC PUBLICATION SOCIETY CO.,
9 BARCLAY STREET.

1887

Imprimatur :

✠ MICHAEL AUGUSTINE,

Archbishop of New York.

July 1, 1887.

E178
H354

Copyright, 1887,

THE CATHOLIC PUBLICATION SOCIETY CO,

PREFACE.

THE present "Abridged History of the United States" has been prepared, at the request of teachers, for the use of those pupils whose time at school is too short for the author's larger work on the same subject. It is hoped that in relieving the scholars of the burden of many details nothing of permanent importance has been neglected, and the story has been made clearer as well as easier to remember.

For nearly ten years the original work upon which this is founded has enjoyed high favor in the Catholic institutions of our own and other countries; and the distinctive features for which it has been most warmly praised are retained and enlarged in the new companion-publication. In a time when exaggerated respect is paid to wealth, enterprise, and material progress, and even school-books teach American lads to boast of the national faculty for getting rich, our young people cannot be too carefully reminded that the true glory of America does not lie in such things; and the author has sought to keep the moral and religious history of the country in its due prominence. In particular he has spared no pains to show the distinguished part which Catholic missionaries, explorers, soldiers, statesmen, patriots, and scholars have had in the making of the United States, and to insist upon the great fact that the growth of the American Church has kept steady pace with the development of a free and happy nation.

NEW YORK, June 1, 1887.



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION,	9

PART FIRST.

DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

CHAPTER

I. Discovery by the Northmen—Columbus—The Cabots—Vespucci—Cortereal,	15
II. The Spanish Explorers—Ponce de Leon, Ayllon, Narvaez, De Soto—The First Missionaries—The Spaniards and Huguenots in Florida—St. Francis Borgia and Pope St. Pius V. and the Indians,	23
III. French Adventurers and Missionaries—Settlement of Canada—The Jesuits in Maine and New York—Exploration of the Mississippi—Marquette, Joliet, La Salle,	31
IV. First English Settlements—Sir Humphrey Gilbert and Walter Raleigh—The Plymouth and London Companies—The Dutch—Claims of the European Powers,	35
V. The English in Virginia—Captain John Smith—Pocahontas—Powhatan,	41
VI. Virginia continued—Political Development—Character of the Colony,	45
VII. New England—The Pilgrims—State and Church—The Quakers—Roger Williams,	49
VIII. New Hampshire—Maine—Connecticut,	59
IX. New Netherland—Character of the Dutch Colony—New Jersey,	61
X. The Catholic Colony of Maryland—Lord Baltimore—Freedom of Worship destroyed by the Protestants,	64
XI. Indian Troubles—King Philip's War,	71
XII. The Carolinas—Georgia—William Penn—Pennsylvania,	74
XIII. The Colonies and the Crown—The Charter Oak—Leisler's Rebellion in New York—"The Negro Plot"—Salem Witchcraft,	78

PART SECOND.

COLONIAL WARS.

XIV. French and English Rivalries—Enterprises of the French—King William's War,	83
---	----

CHAPTER	PAGE
XV. Queen Anne's War—Father Rale—King George's War,	86
XVI. The French in the Mississippi Valley—Progress of the English Colonies—The French and Indian War—George Washington—Benjamin Franklin,	90
XVII. The French and Indian War, continued—Braddock's Defeat—The Acadians,	97
XVIII. The Ministry of the Elder Pitt—The Struggle for Canada—Montcalm and Wolfe—Fall of Quebec—Results of the War—The Conspiracy of Pontiac,	101

PART THIRD.

THE REVOLUTION.

XIX. Condition of the Colonies after the War—Restrictions on Trade—The Stamp Act,	107
XX. The Boston Massacre—Destruction of Tea—The Boston Port Bill—The First Continental Congress,	111
XXI. The War Begins—Lexington—Concord—Ticonderoga—Bunker Hill,	115
XXII. Washington Commander-in-Chief—Operations in Canada—Siege of Boston,	120
XXIII. The Movement for Independence—Proceedings in the Congress—The Declaration Adopted,	125
XXIV. The British at New York—Battle of Long Island—Carleton on Lake Champlain—Battle of White Plains,	129
XXV. Washington and Cornwallis in the Jerseys—Battle of Trenton—Battle of Princeton,	133
XXVI. Assistance from France—The Navy—Foreign Officers—Battle of the Brandywine—Occupation of Philadelphia—Battle of Germantown,	135
XXVII. Burgoyne's Invasion—Battle of Bennington—Surrender of Burgoyne,	139
XXVIII. Operations of 1778—Alliance with France—Battle of Monmouth—Massacre of Wyoming,	143
XXIX. The War in the South—Capture of Stony Point—Hostilities with the Indians—Exploit of John Paul Jones,	147
XXX. Capture of Charleston—Outrages in the South—Defeat of Gates—The Partisan Bands,	152
XXXI. Treason of Benedict Arnold—Execution of Major André,	155
XXXII. Arrival of Count Rochambeau—Revolt among the Troops—Greene in the South,	158

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIII. Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—The End of the War,	162

PART FOURTH.

THE UNION.

XXXIV. The Constitution—Administration of Washington—Disputes with England,	167
XXXV. Settlement of the West,	173
XXXVI. The Catholic Church in the United States at the end of the Revolution,	176
XXXVII. John Adams President, 1797-1801—Hostilities with France—Death of Washington,	180
XXXVIII. Thomas Jefferson President, 1801-1809—Purchase of Louisiana—War with the Barbary States—Aaron Burr—Trouble with England and France,	184
XXXIX. James Madison President, 1809-1817—Second War with England,	187
XL. War on the Niagara Frontier—Lundy's Lane—Battle of Plattsburg—Capture of Washington—Battle of New Orleans—End of the War,	191
XLI. The Barbary Pirates—James Monroe President, 1817-1821—Purchase of Florida—Slavery—The Missouri Compromise—The Monroe Doctrine—Indian Missions,	195
XLII. John Quincy Adams, 1825-1829—Andrew Jackson, 1829-1837—The United States Bank—Nullification—Indian Wars—Railroads—Martin Van Buren, 1837-1841—William Henry Harrison, 1841,	199
XLIII. John Tyler President, 1841-1845—Native American Riots—Texas—Annexation,	202
XLIV. Campaign of Taylor—Capture of California—Campaign of Scott—Fall of Mexico—The Treaty of Peace,	204
XLV. California and New Mexico—The Missions—Discovery of Gold,	208
XLVI. Presidents Taylor, Fillmore, and Pierce, 1849-1857—The Know-Nothings—Reorganization of Parties—The Mormons—The Atlantic Telegraph,	211
XLVII. The Slavery Agitation Increasing—The Compromise of 1850—The Fugitive Slave Law—The Kansas-Nebraska Bill—Repeal of the Missouri Compromise—War	

CHAPTER

PAGE

in Kansas—Dred Scott—John Brown—Election of Abraham Lincoln,	215
---	-----

PART FIFTH.

THE CIVIL WAR.

XLVIII. Southern States Secede—The Confederacy Organized— Fort Sumter—Bull Run—The Neutral States—The Blockade and the Navy—The Trent Affair, . . .	219
XLIX. Second Year of the War—Forts Henry and Donelson— Shiloh—Bragg and Buell in Kentucky—Bragg and Rosecrans—Capture of New Orleans—The <i>Merrimac</i> and the <i>Monitor</i> ,	225
L. Second Year of the War, continued—McClellan on the Peninsula—Pope in Virginia—Second Battle of Bull Run—Invasion of Maryland—Battle of Antietam— Battle of Fredericksburg,	231
LI. Third Year of the War—Chancellorsville—Gettysburg— Vicksburg—The Draft—Chickamauga—Chattanooga —Confederate Cruisers,	237
LII. Fourth Year of the War—Grant in Command of all the Armies—His Advance towards Richmond—The Wilderness—Petersburg—Early and Sheridan—Sher- man's Atlanta Campaign—Thomas at Nashville—The March to the Sea—Farragut at Mobile—Fort Fisher— Re-election of President Lincoln,	242
LIII. Sherman in the Carolinas—Fall of Richmond—End of the War—Assassination of the President,	250

PART SIXTH.

THE UNION RESTORED.

LIV. End of Slavery—Reconstruction—Impeachment of Presi- dent Johnson—President Grant—The Treaty of Wash- ington—The Centenary of Independence—President Hayes—President Garfield—President Arthur—Presi- dent Cleveland,	254
LV. The Catholic Church in the United States,	259

INTRODUCTION.*

THE value of the study of history as a means of education is so evident as hardly to need statement. The young reflect but little ; their knowledge is of facts and events, not of principles ; and their thoughts and conversation habitually assume the historic form of narration. They seldom speak of what they think or have thought, but constantly of what they have seen or undergone ; and hence the youthful mind finds more interest and instruction in the deeds than in the thoughts of men. The knowledge thus acquired is also the truest, for what we do is a more real expression of ourselves than what we think. Action is not only intelligible to every one, but its effects are often highly picturesque and appeal strongly to the imagination. History has thus the force of example. By bringing us into almost living contact with the greatest and most highly endowed members of our race, it fills us with admiration for what is noble and heroic. The effort to preserve the memory of high and worthy deeds is universal. There is no tribe so rude as not to have some record of its struggles and victories, and the most civilized nation has no deeper lesson of wisdom to teach than that which is conveyed by its own history. It is needless to insist upon this, for no one is so unreasonable as to imagine that the study of history should be excluded from the process of education.

* Reprinted from Hassard's larger "History of the United States,"

We Americans have a history which if not ancient is honorable. The charm that is given by the consecrating and beautifying power of time is indeed wanting. The thrilling and soul-stirring incidents of an age of chivalry are absent ; embattled castles frown not down upon us, and the pageant of plumed knights and highborn ladies passes not before our eyes. We seem to tread a lower plane. As of old the Israelites with no king but God entered into the promised land, so the people took possession of this New World, to which the Cross of Christ, like the pillar of fire of other days, led the way. The principles and elements of Christian civilization they brought with them to give vigor and strength in a new world to new social forms and systems. They were in a very true sense a chosen people entrusted with a Providential mission, upon the fulfilment of which the future of a large and important portion of the human race is dependent ; and as the highest object of a nation cannot be self-defence, or wealth, or any other outward good, this mission must be associated with principles which are intimately related to the moral welfare and progress of the race. Our growth has been prodigious, our prosperity unbounded, our enterprise and industry keen and unwearying. The wilderness has fled from the face of a resistless army of pioneers ; populous and well-built cities, the centres of a commerce that extends to the end of the world, have sprung up as while men slept ; steam and electricity have made a thousand miles as but a step ; upon our wide-extending plains and prairies the richest harvests wave, and from the exhaustless earth we dig the most precious ores. At the same time the opportunities of education and the means of acquiring knowledge have been brought within the reach of every one.

All this, however, is but the work of preparation—a removal of obstacles. If our society fails to reconcile material with moral progress, and to develop man's higher nature while satisfying his lower wants, it is defective and contains within itself the germ of its dissolution. For the end of society is not to multiply indefinitely the means and opportunities of indulgence, but to form strong and noble men and women; and such characters are not created by indulgence but by self-control, which comes of self-denial. The progress of industries, the growth of material and mechanical civilization, are interesting; but unless our views of human nature are to undergo a radical change there are other things which more nearly concern us. Dr. Brownson maintained that the mission of the United States is to reconcile authority with liberty, to establish the sovereignty of the people without social despotism, and individual freedom without anarchy. But this is the common aim of all free states, and can, therefore, hardly be considered as the peculiar mission of any nation. Americans have hitherto been accustomed to emphasize the value of liberty, and to consider authority as in some way or other dangerously allied to despotism; they are now beginning to perceive, however, that if tyranny lurks in the shadow of authority, anarchy may very readily assume the garb of liberty; and that if a despot is ever to rule over us, he will be lifted to power by the lawless rabble, and not by those who respect and love authority. And this reveals an all-important social mission of the Church in the United States. There are various forces at work in modern society which weaken the spirit of patriotism. The facility and cheapness of travel brings about an increasing friendly intercommunion of the civilized peoples of the world, by

which national prejudice and hatred are being insensibly destroyed. The introduction of machinery has produced relations between capital and labor which are substantially the same in all manufacturing countries; and as the working classes feel themselves aggrieved and at a disadvantage, they merge their national sentiments and seek to make common cause. Again, the frequency of revolution and the notorious unworthiness of politicians have brought government into disrepute, and, though there is a distinction between the country and the government, yet the one cannot be despised without a corresponding diminution of the love and reverence which we bear the other. And finally, as religion is always the surest inspiration and support of patriotism, the breaking down of religious beliefs in various modern nations, and notably in our own, is accompanied by a loss of patriotism. As the love of country grows cold men cease to take an interest in public affairs, or are influenced by selfish motives. Local questions take precedence of national interests, and the spirit of sectional and partisan strife is substituted for the lofty and ennobling passion of patriotism. Reverence for authority is lost, and society, in order to protect itself, is driven to appeal to force. Nothing can avert this danger but the influence of a great moral power, endowed with all the attributes which create respect and encourage obedience.

The Catholic Church is this power, and the mission which she is destined to fulfil in behalf of American society is as yet hardly suspected, though an observant mind cannot fail to perceive its vast importance. No other religion in the United States has unity of doctrine and discipline, or the consciousness of definite purposes, or a great and venerable history, or the confidence born of a thousand triumphs and

of victories wrung from defeat. No other thoroughly trusts its destiny, or dares boldly proclaim its heavenly mission and infallible authority. It is the only historic religion among us. Outside the Church there are shifting views, opinions, and theories ; but there is no organic growth and progressive development of faith and discipline. Whatever may be thought of this, it can no longer be denied that Catholics are a living and growing element in American society ; and hence it is not possible to ignore their views on subjects which have a bearing upon the destiny and welfare of our common country. For my own part, I believe that he who will do most to form the character of the Catholic youth of America, will also have done most to mould the future of the American people. In any event, it is the manifest duty of those who are entrusted with the education of our children to see that in learning the history of their country they do not lose sight of the rise, progress, and social influence of the Church in the United States. The sense of the urgency and importance of this obligation has led the publishers of the *Young Catholic's School Series* to add the present work to their list of textbooks. The author's reputation as a careful and thoughtful writer is of itself sufficient assurance that his task has been well performed. The book has, however, been submitted for examination to competent judges, some of them non-Catholics, and they are unanimous in praise of its merits ; and if I may be permitted to express my own opinion, I will say that I know of no other school history of the United States which is distinguished by so many excellences. The style is clear and simple, the narrative lucid and flowing ; the description of remarkable incidents brief but vivid ; and through the whole book there breathes the spirit of candor and truth.

No attempt is made to prove a point, or to establish a theory, or to arrange the events of our history so as to make them illustrate any particular law or principle. Facts are stated simply as they occurred and are left to tell their own story. The tone and temper in which the work is written at once removes all suspicion of sectional, partisan, or religious prejudice. The writer is a Catholic, and is therefore able to rise above the spirit of party.

✠ J. L. SPALDING.

PEORIA, FEAST OF THE ASSUMPTION, 1878.

PART FIRST.

DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY BY THE NORTHMEN—COLUMBUS—THE CABOTS—VESPUCCI—
CORTEREAL.

1. Early Inhabitants.—The earliest inhabitants of the Western Hemisphere of whom we have any knowledge were a dark-skinned people, divided into many tribes and families, and speaking different languages. Throughout the greater part of both continents they were wandering savages who lived chiefly by the chase. In Mexico, Central America, and parts of South America they had made some progress towards a settled and civilized life.

2. Voyages of the Northmen, and First Christian Settlement.—Greenland was discovered in the ninth century by an Icelander named Gunnbiorn, whose ship was driven thither by a storm. About one hundred years afterwards Greenland was visited by another Icelander named Eric. He explored it, and brought over a large body of colonists, with whom he founded two settlements on the west coast, and thence, dating from the year 1000, expeditions sailed as far south as Narraganset Bay, and probably even to the Bay of New York. Leif, the son of Eric, finding quantities of grapes about the shores of Narraganset Bay, gave the name of Vinland (*vine-land*) to the fertile and beautiful country.

3. Iceland having been converted to Christianity about this time, missionaries soon came over to the North American

colonists, and the Greenland settlements are said to have had at one period sixteen churches, two monasteries, and a bishop. The colonies were destroyed in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and, as communication between Iceland and the rest of the world was difficult and infrequent, the discoveries of Eric and Leif were forgotten by their own countrymen, and never known by the other peoples of Europe.

4. Christopher Columbus.—The existence of America was therefore unsuspected by the Christian world when Christo-



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

pher Columbus, a native of Genoa, conceived the idea that, by sailing westward from some port in Europe, he could reach the shores of Asia.

Commerce with the Indies was in the fifteenth century one of the chief objects of European enterprise, and the discovery of a short route to those rich countries was the favorite dream of maritime adventurers. Columbus knew that the earth was round, but he supposed it to be much smaller than it really is.

5. Character and Aims of Columbus.—In seeking for a short way to India he hoped to become an instrument for the conversion of the heathen and the recovery of the Holy Sepulchre. "It is a curious and characteristic fact," says Washington Irving, "which has never been particularly noticed, that the recovery of the Holy Sepulchre was one of the great objects of his ambition, meditated throughout the remainder of his life and solemnly provided for in his will."

6. Columbus at the Court of Spain.—Columbus explained his project and applied for aid at first to the republic of Genoa ; then to the king of Portugal ; then to Henry VII. of

England ; next, it is said, to the republic of Venice, and afterward to certain Spanish nobles. Disappointed in all these applications, he had recourse, in 1485, to the court of Spain. Ferdinand of Aragon, and his devout and high-minded queen, Isabella of Castile, uniting their dominions, had raised the Spanish monarchy at this period to great power and renown.



ISABELLA THE CATHOLIC.

7. They listened to Columbus with respect, and Isabella in particular was deeply moved by his religious projects. Cardinal Mendoza, archbishop of Toledo, and several other Spanish churchmen, also favored his designs ; but a commission of learned men to whom Ferdinand referred the matter pronounced the scheme vain and impracticable, and after seven years' delay Columbus turned his steps toward France.

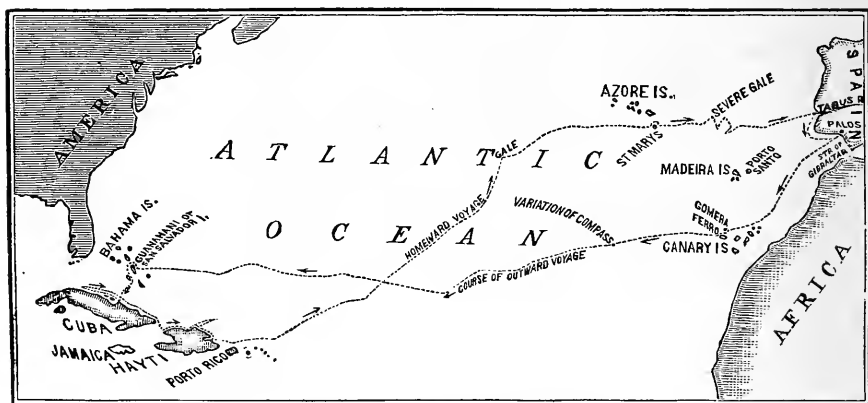
8. On the way he stopped to beg a little bread and water at the convent of La Rabida (*rah-bee'-dah*), near the small seaport of Palos, in Andalusia. The prior, Juan Perez, who had formerly been the queen's confessor, after hearing his story, persuaded him to remain at the convent while he renewed the application to Isabella. The good prior pleaded the cause of his guest with



FR. JUAN PEREZ.

so much ability that Isabella sent for Columbus, and offered to pledge her jewels if the funds for the expedition could be obtained in no other way.

9. Columbus Discovers the New World.—The fleet, which at last set sail from Palos (*pah'-loce*) on the 3d of August, 1492, consisted of three small vessels, the *Santa Maria* (*mah-ree'-ah*), *Pin'ta*, and *Ni'ña* (*neen'-yah*), two of which were light barks, called caravels, without decks. None of them was fit for an ocean voyage. Columbus sailed in the *Santa Maria*, and the two caravels were commanded by the brothers Martin Alonzo Pinzon (*peen-thon'*) and Vincente Yañez (*yahn'-yeth*) Pinzon. On the morning of their departure the whole expedition confessed and received Holy Communion.



THE ROUTE OF COLUMBUS.

10. They sailed first to the Canary Islands. Thence Columbus was persuaded that by keeping due west for about twenty-two hundred miles he should reach the island of Cipango, or Japan, which he supposed to lie in about the situation actually occupied by Florida. His men became alarmed at the length of the voyage, and were on the point of mutiny when, on the night of the 11th of October, 1492, the thirty-sixth day after leaving the Canary Islands, Columbus saw a light, and at two o'clock on the following morning land was made out from the *Pinta*.

11. Landing on San Salvador.—Soon after daylight they

landed on a beautiful island, one of the group now known as the Bahamas. Columbus gave it the name of San Salvador. The natives called it Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'-nee*). Reaching the shore the discoverers fell on their knees to



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS.

thank God, and then, planting the cross and the Spanish standard, took solemn possession of the island in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella, while the natives crowded about them and revered them as superior beings descended from heaven.

12. Columbus in the West Indies.—In the course of twelve weeks Columbus visited several of the Bahamas, discovered Cuba, which he supposed to be part of the mainland of Asia, visited the island of Hayti (*hay'-tee*), naming it Hispanio'la, or Little Spain, and leaving thirty-nine men to form a colony on its coast; then, after losing the *Santa Maria* by shipwreck, he sailed again for Spain.

13. Columbus Returns to Spain.—He re-entered the port of Palos, March 15, 1493, after an absence of seven months. Extraordinary honors were lavished upon him, and he was conducted in triumph to the court of Barcelona, taking with him several Indians and a quantity of gold, curious birds and animals, and other products of the New World. A second expedition was immediately fitted out under his command. It consisted of seventeen ships and fifteen hundred men, well supplied with everything necessary for the establishment of a colony. Twelve missionaries accompanied the fleet, one of them, Father Bernardo Boyle, a Benedictine, having the rank of vicar-apostolic.

14. Second Voyage of Columbus.—Columbus sailed on his second voyage September 25, 1493. He found the settlement on the island of Hispaniola in ruins and all the colonists dead, their excesses having provoked the hostility of the natives. After building a town, which he called Isabella, erecting a church, and making arrangements to collect gold, he explored the coasts of Hispaniola and Cuba, discovered Jamaica, Porto Rico (*ree'-co*), and other islands, and on his return to Spain left his brother Bartholomew in command of the settlement.

15. Third Voyage of Columbus and Discovery of the Mainland.—On his third voyage, in 1498, he discovered the South American continent and entered the mouth of the river Orino'co. Mutinies, however, broke out in the colony. The misconduct of the Spaniards thwarted the labors of the missionaries, turned the amiable natives into cruel enemies, and lessened the expected profits of the crown. The intrigues of dissatisfied and avaricious adventurers made so much impression upon the court that an officer was sent out to investigate the affairs of the colony. He listened to everything that was said against the admiral, and finally sent him home in chains. Isabella, indignant at this outrage, caused Columbus to be honored with new marks of the royal favor; but he was never restored to his government, and after the

death of the queen, Ferdinand treated him with neglect and injustice.

16. Fourth Voyage of Columbus; His Death.—He made a fourth voyage in 1502, in the hope of discovering a passage from the Caribbean Sea into the Indian Ocean, and on this expedition, which was crowded with disaster, he explored part of the coast of Central America. He died in poverty and distress at Valladolid (*val-lah-do-lid'*) in 1506. He never knew that he had found a new world, but supposed to the last that he had reached eastern Asia.

17. Cabot Discovers the North American Continent.—In the meantime other expeditions had followed in the path pointed out by Columbus. John Cabot, a Venetian, sailed from England with a single vessel, under a commission from Henry VII., and on June 24, 1497, discovered the North American continent, more than a year before the mainland of South America was seen by Columbus. He traced the coast from Labrador or Cape Breton to Virginia. His son Sebastian the next year made another voyage, and sailed from Newfoundland to Cape Hatteras.

18. The Spaniards and Vespucci.—These English voyages had no immediate result. The Spaniards prosecuted their discoveries in South America with great energy, their most distinguished adventurer being Alonzo de Ojeda (*o-hay'-dah*), one of the companions of Columbus. Ojeda was accompanied by a Florentine merchant named Amerigo Vespucci (*a-mer-ee'-go ves-poot'-chee*), who afterwards made a voyage of his own to Brazil and wrote the first published account of the New World. His work excited so much interest that the fresh-found land was called America in his honor.

19. Voyages of Cortereal.—A Portuguese expedition under Gaspar Cortereal (*cor-tay-ray-al'*) was sent to look for a northern route to India in 1500. Either on this voyage or a second one, in 1501, Cortereal explored the American coast for five hundred or six hundred miles; being stopped by ice in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. He seized a number of Indians as

slaves, and called the country Labrador, a name which was afterwards transferred to a region further north. Cortereal never returned from his second voyage, and his fate is unknown.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who were the earliest known inhabitants of America?
2. When was Greenland discovered? Describe Eric's voyages.
3. What is said of Christianity in Greenland? What was the fate of the colonies?
4. What was the idea of Columbus? What was his theory of the earth?
5. What religious motives impelled him?
6. To whom did he apply for aid?
7. How was he received in Spain?
8. How did the queen at last help him?
9. When did he sail? From what port? Describe his fleet.
10. Describe the voyage. When was land seen?
11. What was this land? Describe the landing of Columbus.
12. Give an account of the rest of the voyage.
13. How was Columbus received on his return?
14. Give an account of his second voyage.
15. What did he discover on his third voyage? When? How did the voyage end?
16. Describe his fourth voyage. Did he ever known the extent of his discoveries?
17. Who discovered the continent of North America? Describe the voyages of the Cabots.
18. Who was Ojeda? From whom was America named?
19. What did Cortereal discover?

CHAPTER II.

THE SPANISH EXPLORERS—PONCE DE LEON, AYLLON, NARVAEZ, DE SOTO—THE FIRST MISSIONARIES—THE SPANIARDS AND HUGUENOTS IN FLORIDA—ST. FRANCIS BORGIA AND POPE ST. PIUS V. AND THE INDIANS.

1. Character of the Spanish Explorers.—The first Spanish explorers of the New World were animated by a thirst for daring adventure and a zeal for the Catholic religion which resembled the chivalrous enthusiasm of the Crusaders. But they had not the piety, pure sentiment, benevolence, and unselfish ambition of Columbus; and while they invited missionaries to accompany their expeditions, in order to convert the savages, they were not willing to submit themselves to the instructions of these religious guides.

2. Next to the fascination of bold enterprise their chief impulse was a love of gold. The small quantity of that precious metal which they saw in the possession of the natives convinced them that there were mines and rich cities in the interior, and many hundreds of lives were lost in searching for them.

3. The Indians were distributed as slaves among the conquerors, and compelled to dig in mines, to cultivate the ground, and to serve instead of beasts of burden. Under hardships for which their previous way of life had not prepared them they died with awful rapidity. Queen Isabella suppressed these cruel abuses, but they were revived after her death. Bartholomew de Las Casas, the first priest ordained in the New World, devoted himself with extraordinary ardor to the relief of the poor natives, and made several voyages to Spain to demand redress from the crown.

4. At his instigation, Cardinal Ximenes (*he-may'-nez*), the minister of Charles V., appointed a commission of ecclesiastics to devise a scheme of reform, and Las Casas was

honored with the title of Protector-General of the Indians. He afterwards became a Dominican and Bishop of Chiapa (*che-ah'-pah*) in Mexico, continuing his zealous labors in the face of great opposition, and encouraging his Dominican brethren in that enlightened care for the welfare of the Indians for which the missionaries of that order were so highly distinguished.

5. Rapid Progress of Discovery and Settlement.—Although the avarice and rapacity of the Spaniards continually thwarted the work of the missions, the material growth of their colonies was very rapid. The settlements in Cuba, Hispaniola, and other islands became points of departure for many important expeditions to the mainland. Within four or five years of the death of Columbus they occupied the coasts of Central America and Southern Mexico, everywhere forming colonies, collecting gold, silver, dye-stuffs, and other valuable products, and setting up royal governors, who pushed their discoveries still further and further.

6. The South Sea, or the ocean washing the shores of Asia, was found in 1513 by Vasco Nuñez (*noon'-yeth*) de Balbo'a, who crossed the Isthmus of Panama, and, wading into the Pacific, took possession of it in the name of the Spanish sovereign. Mexico was visited by Cor'dova in 1517; Cortes sailed from Havana to conquer it in 1519; Pizar'ro went from Panama to the conquest of Peru in 1531.

7. Discovery of Florida.—Before this, however, the Spaniards had crossed over to the present territory of the United States. Six years after the death of Columbus, Ponce de León (*pone'-tha-da-la-on'*) sailed from Porto Rico in search of a land towards the north where it was reported that gold abounded, and a fountain bubbled up in the forest whose waters conferred upon all who drank of them the gift of perpetual youth.

8. He discovered Florida in 1512, and gave it the name by which it is still known, because he first saw it on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards called Pascua de Flores, or

the pasch of flowers. De Leon returned in 1521 with the first expedition which undertook the conquest of any part of the United States, but he was driven away mortally wounded.

9. Ayllon.—Vasquez (*vahs'-keth*) de Ayllon (*ile-yon*) renewed the attempt in 1525 with six hundred men, explored the coast as far north as Maryland, and made several expeditions inland; but three-fourths of the party, including the commander, perished miserably.

10. Narvaez and the First Missionaries.—Panfilo de Narvaez (*pan'-fee-lo-da-nar-vah'-eth*) led an expedition into Florida in 1528, looking for gold, and was lost with his whole company except four men, who coasted along the Gulf of Mexico in a canoe, and finally, after six years' wandering, reached the Spanish settlements on the Gulf of Mexico. Narvaez was accompanied by several missionaries, the first within the present limits of the United States. They all perished without the opportunity of making any establishment.

11. De Soto on the Mississippi.—Hernando de Soto landed at Tampa Bay, Florida, in 1539. With nearly a thousand men, prepared for conquest and colonization, he moved inland, searching for gold and pearls, and everywhere pillaging and outraging the Indians. After two years of marching and fighting he discovered the Mississippi River (1541), crossing it not far from the present site of Memphis. Worn out with misfortunes, De Soto died in 1542 and was buried in the waters of the river.

12. The remnant of his expedition, after fruitless attempts to reach the coast by a land march, built boats on the river, forging nails from the fetters of their Indian slaves, twisting cordage from the bark of the mulberry, and using Indian mantles for sails. Thus they descended to the Gulf and reached the Spanish settlement of Panuco, in Mexico. They were in sad plight, having been absent four years, lost two-thirds of their number, and accomplished nothing of value.

The missionaries who set out with them could do nothing in the face of the excesses of the soldiers, and all of them died during the expedition.

13. Dominican Martyrs in Florida.—In 1549 the Dominican Father Cancer made an heroic attempt to establish the faith in Florida without the help of arms. The Spanish king, Philip II., placed a ship at his disposal, and he sailed with three other Dominicans from Havana, first publishing a royal decree to release all natives of Florida held in slavery. He landed at Appalachee Bay, and was immediately put to death by the Indians, the expedition being thereupon abandoned.

14. Spaniards at Pensacola.—Ten years later Don Tristán de Luna sailed from Mexico with a considerable fleet, soldiers and their wives, and a number of priests, to attempt the colonization of Florida. He landed in Pensacola Bay, but encountered only misfortunes, and abandoned the enterprise after two years' trials.

15. Spaniards in New Mexico.—Meanwhile the Spanish colonists in Mexico sent out expeditions which penetrated into the territory now belonging to the United States, and examined the coast of California. The Franciscan Father Mark, of Nice, led a small party of discovery into New Mexico in 1539, and took back reports of a civilization quite different from the rude condition of most of the North American tribes. He gave such accounts of some large towns, known as the Seven Cities of Cibola, which he had seen from a distance, that the viceroy of Mexico sent an expedition under Vasquez de Coronado to explore the region (1540), Father Mark and four other Franciscans making part of the company.

16. The seven cities proved to be poor towns, and the Spaniards returned disappointed. Father John de Padilla and Brother John of the Cross remained to found a mission among the Indians, but they were soon martyred. The same fate befell three Franciscans—Father Rodriguez, Father Lo-

pez, and Father John de Santa Maria—who attempted to Christianize New Mexico in 1580.

17. Settlement of St. Augustine ; Massacre of the French.

—The first permanent settlement in what is now the United States was made by the Spaniards at St. Augustine, Florida, in September, 1565. French Huguenot adventurers had established themselves on the St. John's River of Florida a short time before this, and engaged in piracy and gold-hunting. A Spanish fleet under Pedro Melendez (*ma-len'-deth*) was sent to destroy all French settlements within the territory of which Spain claimed ownership. Melendez fell upon the Huguenots, massacred most of them, and then founded St. Augustine.

18. Massacre of Spanish Settlers.—Three years after the massacre of the Huguenots a French adventurer, Dominic de Gourgues (*deh-goorg'*), having fitted out an expedition at his own risk, sailed for the Spanish settlements on the St. John's, and, with the help of the Indians, destroyed three forts and slew four or five hundred men. St. Augustine, however, was not attacked.

19. The Jesuit Missions in Florida.—Very soon after the Spaniards had established themselves in Florida the condition of the missions in that part of the world attracted the particular attention of St. Francis Borgia, the general of the Society of Jesus. He sent Father Peter Martinez with two associates to attempt the conversion of the natives ; but Father Martinez was immediately put to death by the savages near St. Augustine (1566), and his companions went to Havana to prepare themselves for further attempts by learning the languages of the Florida tribes from the slaves held in that settlement. The Father-General sent out a number of other missionaries, with Father John Baptist Segura as vice-provincial (1568) ; an earnest effort was made by Father John Roger to plant mission settlements, and a school was established at Havana for the instruction of Indian converts and the training of missionaries.

20. The Pope and the Spanish Settlers.—Pope St. Pius V. in 1569 addressed a brief to the viceroy, Melendez, commending the missions to his care, and urging him especially to check the vices and immoralities of the colonists, which had thus far rendered the labors of the priests fruitless. "This," said the pontiff, "is the key of this holy work, in which is included the whole essence of your charge."

21. Jesuits on the Rappahannock.—Several other attempts to establish the faith on the North American con-



THE JESUIT TEACHER.

tinent having failed, Father Segura, with four other Jesuits, a baptized Indian chief called Don Luis, and four Indian boys from the school at Havana, undertook in 1570 to found a mission on the Chesapeake or Bay of St. Mary, far from any Spanish settlement. They built a chapel which they named Our Lady of Axacan, probably on the Rappahannock, below the present site of Fredericksburg, Virginia, and there spent a hard

winter. Don Luis apostatized, and under his lead the Indians massacred the whole party except one of the boys (February, 1571). The Jesuits after this abandoned the Florida mission and transferred themselves to Mexico.

22. The Franciscans in Florida.—The Franciscans next attempted the conversion of the Indians. They had a convent at St. Augustine and a number of stations in the neighboring country, where they gathered the savages into villages and taught them the habits of civilization as well as the doctrines of the faith. In 1597 nearly all these stations were destroyed and the friars put to death by a rising of the Indians. Other Franciscans arrived, however, four years later, and

Florida was soon erected into the Franciscan province of St. Helena, so named from the convent at St. Augustine.

23. In a short time the Franciscans had twenty convents or residences in the vast region which then went by the name of Florida; and gradually they established settlements of Christian Indians far inland, which flourished for nearly a hundred years. They were greatly strengthened in 1693 by the founding of Pensacola, where the Spaniards made a fortified settlement and dedicated it with great solemnity to the Blessed Virgin.

24. Catholic Missions Destroyed by the English and the Indians.—The Spanish missions in Florida and Georgia were at last almost wholly destroyed by the English, who attacked them with the help of their pagan Indian allies, the Alabamas, and carried off the converts to be sold as slaves. In 1705 the English and the Alabamas took St. Mark's, the chief settlement of the Appalachee mission, massacred eight hundred Indians and three friars, and carried off an immense number of slaves.

25. The missions lasted, however, until Florida was ceded to England in 1763; then the Franciscans left the colony with most of the Spanish settlers, and the Christian Indians, being expelled from their churches and mission-buildings, were driven into the forests, where they lost all trace of faith and civilization, and became the fierce tribe known as Seminoles, or "wanderers."

26. Franciscans in New Mexico.—In the meantime Spanish Franciscans had continued their missionary labors in New Mexico, where Santa Fé, the second permanent settlement in the United States, was founded by Don Antonio de Espejo (*es-pay'-ho*) in 1582. The Catholic missionaries had prosperous communities of industrious and educated Indians in New Mexico long before the Puritans established themselves in New England; they had penetrated into Texas as early as 1544; and they had attempted the conversion of California, where the Carmelites and Jesuits were also pio-

neers of the cross. The Spanish missions in all these regions lasted, with some interruptions, down to our day.

QUESTIONS.

- 1, 2. What was the character of the first Spanish explorers?
 3. How did they treat the Indians?
 - 3, 4. Give an account of the labors of Las Casas.
 5. What is said of the Spanish settlements?
 6. Who discovered the Pacific? Who conquered Mexico? Peru?
 - 7, 8. Who discovered Florida? Why was it so named?
 9. Describe the voyage of De Ayllon.
 10. That of Narvaez.
 - 11, 12. That of De Soto.
 13. What did Father Cancer attempt? The result?
 14. Describe De Luna's expedition.
 15. What was the expedition of Father Mark, of Nice?
 16. What came of it?
 17. What was the first permanent settlement in the United States?
- What French settlement was formed in Florida? What became of it?
18. How was the massacre avenged?
 19. What can you say of St. Francis Borgia? What missionary enterprises did he promote in the New World?
 20. What did the pope urge the Spanish viceroy to do?
 21. Give an account of the Jesuit mission on the Rappahannock.
 22. What did the Franciscans undertake?
 23. Give some account of their missions.
 - 24, 25. What became of them?
 26. In what other region were the Franciscans at work? What can you say of Santa Fé? Give an account of the New Mexico mission.

CHAPTER III.

THE FRENCH ADVENTURERS AND MISSIONARIES—SETTLEMENT OF CANADA—THE JESUITS IN MAINE AND NEW YORK—EXPLORATION OF THE MISSISSIPPI—MARQUETTE, JOLIET, LA SALLE.



MARQUETTE SAILING DOWN THE MISSISSIPPI.

1. **The French in the North.**—While the Spaniards were exploring the southern part of the continent the French were making discoveries at the north. They visited Cape Breton and the mouth of the St. Lawrence at the beginning of the sixteenth century, and engaged in the cod-fishery off Newfoundland.

2. **Verrazzano** (*ver-rat-tsay'-no*), an Italian employed by the French king, examined the coast from North Carolina

to Maine (1523), probably entered New York and Narraganset bays, and was the first to recognize that America was not a part of the Indies. James Cartier (*car-te-ay'*) commanded three French expeditions to Newfoundland and Canada between 1534 and 1541. They were designed partly to open trade and partly for missionary enterprise, as were all the most important of the French ventures in America. Cartier was a religious man, and before sailing from St. Malo on his second voyage he and all his company assembled in the cathedral, where they received communion and were blessed by the bishop. Their attempts at colonization were not successful.

3. Samuel Champlain, a pious and enterprising French Catholic, established a colony at Port Royal, in Acadia (Nova Scotia), in 1605, in partnership with a Protestant gentleman named De Monts. The royal patent, granting an extensive territory for this colony, stipulated that the savages should be taught the Catholic faith. Abandoned after two years by its original projectors, Port Royal became a central station for the Jesuit missions among the Indians (1610).

4. This missionary establishment was indebted to the zeal and generosity of the Marchioness de Guercheville, a devout French lady, to whom De Monts ceded his patent and the French king afterwards granted the whole of New France—a name under which the French included not only Acadia and Canada but all the territory of what is now the United States.

5. **Mount Desert.**—An expedition fitted out at Madame de Guercheville's cost landed on Mount Desert Island (Maine) in 1613, and planted a missionary settlement which they named St. Sauveur (Holy Saviour). The company included three Jesuit priests—Fathers Masse, Biard, and Quentin—and a lay brother, Gilbert du Thet (*tay*). They were heartily welcomed by the Indians; but hardly were they established when Captain Argall, a lawless English adventurer from Virginia, made a descent upon them, claiming for his country-

men the exclusive possession of all that region. He opened fire from his ship, killing Brother du Thet; he pillaged and destroyed the mission; sent Father Masse and some of the lay colonists to sea in an open boat, whence they were finally rescued by a French fisherman; and carried the rest of the party to Virginia. There Fathers Biard and Quentin suffered a long captivity. Argall afterwards broke up the mission at Port Royal with similar violence.

6. Elsewhere at the North the French prospered. Champlain explored part of New York and discovered the lake which bears his name (1609). The Jesuits were very successful in the Canada mission, and also founded Christian villages among the Indians within the present limits of the United States from Maine to Wisconsin.

7. **Jesuits in New York.**—The Huron and Algonquin tribes, among whom the Jesuits made so many converts, were attacked and finally destroyed or dispersed by the fierce Iroquois, or Five Nations, of New York. In the course of this savage war the missions were broken up and many of the Jesuits were martyred. Among the most celebrated of this heroic band were Father Isaac Jogues, killed near Caughnawaga, New York, after the most horrible tortures (1646), and Fathers Lalemant and Brebeuf, who were fastened to stakes and slowly hacked to death at the mission of St. Ignatius (1649). The scene of Father Jogues' martyrdom is commemorated by a chapel erected near Auriesville, Montgomery County, in 1884.

8. A few weeks before his death Father Jogues discovered Lake George and named it Lake of the Blessed Sacrament, because the day was the feast of Corpus Christi. After the destruction of the Huron missions the surviving priests soon returned, and began the still more dangerous task of converting the victorious and savage Iroquois.

9. **Marquette on the Mississippi.**—In 1673 the Jesuit Father Marquette (*ket'*), who had been for several years a missionary among the fugitive Hurons on Lake Michigan,

succeeded in reaching the Mississippi by crossing Wisconsin. His object was to open the way for further missionary efforts. He was accompanied by Louis Joliet (*zhole'-e-ay*), a fur-trader commissioned by the governor of Canada to seek a passage by this route to the South Sea, as the river, of which earlier missionaries had given some report, was supposed to empty into the Gulf of California.

10. Marquette and Joliet floated down the Mississippi in bark canoes as far as the mouth of the Arkansas, and on their discoveries the French established their claims to the great West. Afterwards, under the orders of Frontenac, governor of Canada, La Salle explored the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. In 1684 he attempted to found a colony at the mouth of the great river, but he was killed in a revolt of his men, and the expedition ended in disaster.

QUESTIONS.

1. What part of the continent were the Spaniards exploring? What were the French doing in the meanwhile?
2. Who found out that America was not a part of the Indies? Give an account of Verrazzano's voyage. Of the voyages of Cartier.
3. Who founded Port Royal? What did this settlement become?
4. Who was the principal supporter of the Port Royal establishment?
5. Give an account of the settlement on Mount Desert. How was it broken up? What became of the missionaries?
6. What discovery did Champlain make in New York?
7. How were the Jesuit missions among the Hurons of New York broken up? Give an account of some of the most distinguished of the missionaries. What memorial of Father Jogues has been erected?
8. What did Father Jogues discover? What did the Jesuits do after the destruction of the Huron missions?
9. What is said of Father Marquette? Who was his companion? What was Joliet seeking?
10. Describe their voyage. That of La Salle.

CHAPTER IV.

FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENTS—SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT AND WALTER RALEIGH—THE PLYMOUTH AND LONDON COMPANIES—THE DUTCH—CLAIMS OF THE EUROPEAN POWERS.

1. Early English Voyages.—Although the English claimed a large part of the continent in right of Cabot's discovery (1497), it was nearly eighty years before they made any serious attempt to explore it. Martin Frobisher made three voyages (1576–1578) in search of a northwest passage to India, and gave his name to the strait which leads into Hudson's Bay. John Davis made three voyages with the same object (1585–1587), and discovered the strait called by his name which opens into Baffin's Bay.

2. The English on the Pacific.—Sir Francis Drake in the meantime had reached the Pacific by the Strait of Magellan (1578), pillaged the Spanish settlements in Peru and Chili, and taken possession of California in the name of Queen Elizabeth, and, after a vain attempt to find a northern passage to the Atlantic, had returned to England by the Cape of Good Hope, thus circumnavigating the globe—a feat which no one except the Portuguese Magellan had performed before.

3. Sir Humphrey Gilbert.—The first Englishman to undertake the colonization of the American continent was Sir Humphrey Gilbert. His half-brother, Walter Raleigh (*raw'-le*), one of the most gallant of Elizabeth's courtiers, was associated with him in the enterprise and bore a large share of the cost.

4. Gilbert sailed in 1587 with five ships and two hundred and sixty men, and took possession of Newfoundland, where he collected some worthless mineral which he supposed to be silver. The colonists became mutinous and discontented, and abandoned the enterprise, and on the way home Gilbert's ship went down with all on board.

5. Sir Walter Raleigh.—Raleigh now took up Sir Humphrey's task and sent out two ships, commanded by Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow (1584), to explore further. They sailed along the coast of North Carolina, landed on Roanoke Island, and brought home glowing accounts of the mildness of the climate, the fertility of the country, and the friendly disposition of the Indians. Raleigh was knighted as a reward for his enterprise, and received certain trading monopolies; and in compliment to his patroness, the "virgin queen," he called the new land Virginia.

6. The next spring (1585) Raleigh sent out a hundred settlers under Ralph Lane to form a permanent colony. They began a town on Roanoke Island; but provoking the hostility of the Indians, and neglecting to raise corn in order to hunt for gold, they were soon in dire straits. Sir Francis Drake visited Roanoke the following year, after a cruise against the Spaniards in which he had pillaged and burned St. Augustine, and the colonists all took passage with him to England.

7. They carried tobacco with them, and Raleigh made smoking fashionable in England, though the Portuguese had introduced the plant into Portugal and France nearly thirty years before. Tobacco was the only tangible result of his attempts to settle Virginia, and he got no advantage from it.

8. The colonists had hardly departed when Sir Richard Grenville arrived at Roanoke with supplies for them. He left fifteen men to hold the abandoned post, and returned to England, where Raleigh immediately fitted out a new colony of one hundred and fifty men and women, with John White for governor (1587). Again Roanoke Island was found deserted, and the fate of the fifteen men left there by Grenville was never ascertained.

9. White landed his party, and re-embarked for England to ask for further help. But the English nation was then putting forth all its resources to resist the threatened invasion by the Spanish Armada; it was three years before White

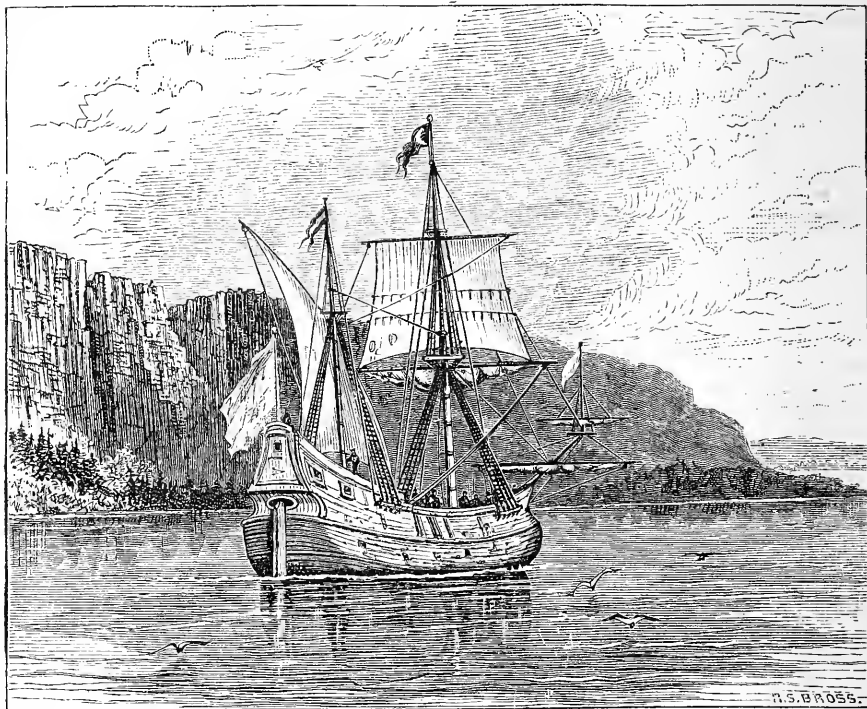
could return to his post, and when he arrived there the third colony had disappeared like the second. Nobody knows what became of it. Raleigh could do no more, and a few years later he was accused of treason and his grants were forfeited.

10. Bartholomew Gosnold.—In 1602 a new direction was given to adventure in America by the voyage of Bartholomew Gosnold, who, instead of following the track of the earlier adventurers by way of the West Indies, took a northern route, discovered and named Cape Cod, and began a settlement on Cuttyhunk Island in Buzzard's Bay. The colony did not succeed; but Gosnold's favorable reports led to other attempts in the same region.

11. The Plymouth and London Companies.—Finally King James I. granted letters patent to a number of gentlemen of London, Bristol, and Plymouth for the privileges of trade and settlement in all the territory between Cape Fear and the Bay of Fundy. There were to be two companies. The northern, or Plymouth Company, might occupy any part of the coast north of latitude 38° ; the southern, or London Company, had the region south of latitude 41° . Thus the grants overlapped each other, the coasts of Long Island, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland being left open to both. Each colony was to be governed by a resident council of thirteen members appointed by the king, with power to choose one of their own number for president. Their laws were to be subject to revision by the king or his council in England, and the religion was to be that of the Protestant Establishment.

12. The Dutch.—The middle region was settled by neither of the English companies which had grants for it, but by the Dutch. Captain Henry Hudson, an Englishman employed by the Dutch East India Company, sailed from Amsterdam (1609) in a vessel called the *Half-Moon* to look for a passage to India around the northern coasts of Europe. Being stopped by the ice, he turned westward to try the American side,

13. After coasting from Maine to the Chesapeake he entered the Bay of New York, September 3, two months after the French had first seen Lake Champlain. He discovered the river which now bears his name, and ascended beyond the present site of Albany. The next year (1610) he made a voyage in the service of the Muscovy Company of London



THE HALF-MOON ASCENDING THE HUDSON RIVER.

in search of a northwest passage, and discovered Hudson's Bay. On the way home his crew mutinied and sent him adrift with eight others in an open boat. Nothing more was ever heard of him.

14. On the strength of Hudson's discoveries the Dutch claimed the coast from New Jersey to the Bay of Fundy, and gave it the name of New Netherland. They immediately began a fur trade with the Indians on the Hudson,

then called the Mauritius (*maw-rish'-i-us*) River, and in 1613 built a temporary fort on Manhattan Island, the site of the city of New York; but their first permanent settlement was Fort Nassau, near Albany, built in 1614.

15. Claims of the European Powers.—Thus there were four nations whose claims in America were more or less in conflict, none of them having any idea of the vast extent of the land which they assumed to own. The Spaniards confined their explorations to the south and the Pacific coast, but claimed everything north of them. Mexico and the country thereabouts they called New Spain, and to the rest of the country they gave the general name of Florida. The French held Canada and part of the Northern States; they claimed everything south of them, and called the whole New France. The English placed themselves midway between the French and Spanish settlements, claiming everything from New England and Carolina westward to the Pacific, and naming the country Virginia. The Dutch colony of New Netherland cut the English Virginia in two, separating the plantations of the London and Plymouth companies.

16. The Spaniards aimed at conquering empires, rich in gold and silver, for the Spanish crown, establishing royal governments, and converting the Indians to Christianity. Missionaries always accompanied them, and ample provision was made for their support. The ambition of the French was to secure the valuable fur trade, fisheries, etc., by a chain of permanent settlements and trading-posts, and to make friends of the Indians both for their own security and as a barrier against English encroachments. The government generally, but not uniformly, favored the missionaries, and the labors of these devoted men were from the first signally successful. The English adventurers at the outset were mere trading companies, and the Christianization of the savages formed no part of their original plan, except in the Catholic colony of Maryland. The Dutch also were traders who had no interest in missions.

QUESTIONS.

1. Upon what did the English found their claims in North America? Tell me something about the voyages of Frobisher. Of Davis.
 2. Of Francis Drake.
 3. Who was the first Englishman to attempt the colonization of the American continent? Who was associated with him in the venture?
 4. Give an account of the enterprise.
 5. What did Raleigh undertake? How did he name the country discovered by his expedition?
 6. Give an account of the first Roanoke colony.
 7. What did the colonists carry home with them?
 8. What is the history of the second Roanoke colony?
 9. Of the third?
 10. What was done by Bartholomew Gosnold?
 11. Describe the grants to the Plymouth and London companies.
 12. What nation settled the middle region of the Atlantic coast?
- Who was Henry Hudson?
13. What did he discover? What was his fate?
 14. What use did the Dutch make of their discoveries?
 15. What four nations were now engaged in the settlement of America? Give a brief account of the claims of each.

CHAPTER V.

THE ENGLISH IN VIRGINIA—CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH—POCAHONTAS—POWHATAN.

1. **The London Company.**—The earliest attempts at colonization under the new English patent were made by the Plymouth Company, but these failed, and it was reserved for the London Company of Virginia to establish the first permanent English settlement in the New World.

2. In December, 1606, the London Company despatched a fleet of three small vessels, commanded by Captain Christopher Newport, and carrying one hundred and five colonists. Twenty of the settlers were mechanics, and the rest were soldiers, servants, and idle gentlemen; there were no women among them. Gosnold, Wingfield, Hunt (a minister of the Church of England), Percy (a brother of the Earl of Northumberland), and John Smith, an Englishman who had distinguished himself by some remarkable adventures in the wars against the Turks, were the most important members of the party.

3. They took the long route by the West Indies, and made a voyage of nearly four months. In April, 1607, they entered Chesapeake Bay, and on the 13th of May they chose the site of their settlement on King's (afterward called James) River, and began the building of Jamestown,



naming both the stream and the town after King James I. This was the third permanent settlement by Europeans in the United States, and the first by Englishmen.

4. Captain John Smith.—The settlers quarrelled from the first. Wingfield, their president, was soon deposed and succeeded by Ratcliffe, but affairs were not improved by the change, and Captain John Smith became by common consent the real leader of the party. He suppressed mutinies, compelled the idle to work, kept off attacks by the savages, and saved the colony from starvation by inducing the Indians to supply them with corn.

5. On one of his expeditions he was captured by the savages. Showing them a pocket-compass, he so much excited their wonder at the motion of the needle that they treated him as a superior being. Their amazement was increased when they found that a letter, which they allowed him to send to Jamestown, could “talk,” and was quickly answered by the arrival of articles he had sent for.

6. Pocahontas.—There is a popular story that when Smith was about to be killed by order of the powerful chief Powhatan, and the club was raised to beat out his brains, the chief's daughter, Pocahontas, a girl of ten or twelve years, threw herself on the captive's neck and saved his life. This romantic tale is now regarded as a fiction ; but it is certain that Pocahontas was of great use to the colonists on many occasions.

7. Reaching Jamestown after seven weeks' absence, Smith found the colony in great misery. Only forty men were left, and, though Newport returned twice in 1608 with other emigrants, they were mostly vagabond gentlemen like the first. The whole company gave themselves up to gold-hunting, and loaded the ships with useless earth, which they supposed to contain the precious metal. A fourth and still larger party, sent out in 1609, was still worse than the first, second, and third.

8. The raising of food was neglected, and a famine was

only alleviated by the generosity of Pocahontas, who often brought food to the settlement in her canoe. On one occasion she averted a general massacre of the whites by bringing them information at night of an intended attack. The ungrateful colonists, after Smith had left the country, made her a prisoner and demanded a ransom. Powhatan was too indignant even to answer them. In captivity she was baptized, took the name of Rebecca, and married John Rolfe, one of the colonists, who went with her to England and presented her at court. She died suddenly as she was about to return to America, leaving a son, who became the ancestor of an honorable Virginia family.

9. Smith was regularly elected president in 1608, and affairs began to mend, but, being injured by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, he went to England in 1609 for surgical aid, and never returned. His departure was nearly fatal to the settlement. He left four hundred and ninety colonists, and in six months only sixty remained alive.

10. **Lord Delaware.**—In June, 1610, the survivors abandoned Jamestown, and, having constructed some small vessels, were on their way to Newfoundland, hoping to be taken care of by English fishermen there, when they met a fleet in the James River coming to their aid. It carried abundant supplies and a large party of settlers, led by Lord Delaware (De la Warr), who, under a new charter granted to the London Company, had been appointed governor of Virginia for life. The deserting colonists and the new arrivals returned to the settlement together with great rejoicing.

11. From this time Jamestown prospered. The lands had been held in community, but each man now received and cultivated a share for himself ; industry was encouraged ; valuable crops of tobacco were sent home to England ; new settlements were commenced on the James. Powhatan, after the marriage of his daughter, became a steady friend of the whites ; and before long respectable young women were sent out as wives for the planters. Under Governor Yeardley

an important change was made in the form of administration. A representative assembly was summoned (1619), the first legislature ever elected in America ; and thus was laid the foundation for that popular form of government which soon prevailed throughout all the colonies.

QUESTIONS.

1. Which of the English companies made the first permanent settlement in the New World ?
2. Give an account of their first colony.
3. Where did it land ? When ?
4. Who became the real leader of the colony ?
5. What is told of his capture by the Indians ?
- 6, 8. Give the story of Pocahontas.
7. How did the colonists conduct themselves ?
9. What was the consequence of Smith's return to England ?
10. How was the colony saved from being broken up ?
11. What important changes contributed to its prosperity ? What is said of the assembly summoned in 1619 ?

CHAPTER VI.

VIRGINIA CONTINUED—POLITICAL DEVELOPMENT—CHARACTER OF THE COLONY.

1. The First American Constitution.—In 1621 the London Company granted to the Virginia colony a written constitution, the first ever established in America. The authority was confided to a Governor and Council appointed by the company, and an Assembly consisting of the Council and a House of Burgesses elected by the people. Laws enacted by the Assembly required the assent of the governor and of the company in England. Nobody as yet held the idea that the people were capable of ruling themselves. The orders of the company, however, had to be ratified by the colonists.

2. Indian Hostilities.—After the death of Powhatan the savages, led by Opecancanough, the brother of that chief, determined upon the destruction of all the English. On the 22d of March, 1622, they suddenly attacked the scattered plantations, and massacred three hundred and fifty persons.

3. In a few days the number of settlements was reduced from eighty to eight. The colonists gathered in fortified towns, and a bloody Indian war began, in which the savages suffered severely, but the English also were greatly reduced. Another massacre, in which three hundred persons perished, took place April 18, 1644. Opecancanough was made prisoner two years later, and died in captivity, and the red men were gradually driven back from the coast, and left the fertile lands of that region to the white colonists.

4. Political Changes.—There had long been disagreements between King James I., who was jealous of his authority, and the London Company, which, in asserting its

rights over the colony, was also contending for political liberties. In 1624, after an unsuccessful attempt to induce the colonists to surrender their privileges, James cancelled the charter and the company was dissolved. Virginia was now a royal province, but for several years there was no change in its local government.

5. King Charles I. allowed the colonists in practice to rule themselves. They levied their own taxes, and, as the crown was too much occupied with other things to pay attention to them, they became almost an independent state. Under the rule of the Parliament they secured the right of electing their own governor; but after the restoration of Charles II. an aristocratic party got control of the colonial legislature, restricted the privilege of voting to the land-owners, kept the Assembly in power without regard to the term for which it had been elected, imposed severe taxes, and paid every member of the Assembly two hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco a day, which, according to the present value of money, would be worth about forty-five dollars.

6. **Navigation Laws.**—The dissatisfaction of the settlers was increased by oppressive navigation laws passed by the English Parliament in 1660 and 1663, which forbade them to buy or sell in any country except England, or export their produce in any except English vessels. These unjust and unwise laws, enacted for the benefit of avaricious English merchants, gave a severe blow to the industry of all the American colonies by raising the price of everything they needed to buy, and lowering the price of everything they had to sell.

7. **Bacon's Rebellion.**—The Virginians were ready for revolt when an Indian war broke out on the border of Maryland (1675). The colonists armed themselves for defence under the command of a popular young planter named Nathaniel Bacon; but the governor, Sir William Berkeley, distrusted Bacon, declared him a rebel, and collected a military force to oppose him.

8. This was a signal for insurrection. Bacon first punished the Indians, and then marched against Jamestown, which he burned to the ground (Sept., 1676), but in the midst of his success he died of fever, and his followers were soon overcome. Gov. Berkeley treated the insurgents with the most cruel severity, causing twenty-two to be hanged. Soon afterward, to the great joy of the Virginians, he returned to England, where he died in disgrace. "The old fool," said King Charles II., "has taken away more lives in that naked country than I did here for the murder of my father."

9. **Character of the Settlers.**—A large proportion of the first settlers of Virginia were men of good family, attracted to the new world by the desire to make money and to enjoy personal freedom. Many of them secured patents for plantations of their own, instead of attempting to improve the lands in common, and brought out laborers at their private expense. Thus large estates were founded, and a strong aristocratic element was infused into society.

10. A great deal of the work was done by white convicts from England, sold into servitude for a term of years as a punishment for felonies or political offences. Prisoners of the Scottish and civil wars were thus sold by the English government, just as Cromwell sold Irish Catholics into slavery in the West Indies. At the end of their term of service these convicts (many of whom were not criminals but political victims of tyranny) became the equals of the other colonists. Young women and children were kidnapped in England and sold to the planters. The first women sent out as wives for the settlers were also sold.

11. In 1619 a cargo of Africans was brought to Virginia by a Dutch vessel. This was the origin of negro slavery in the English colonies of America, but for many years the number of slaves was very small. The first colony to establish slavery by law was Massachusetts, and the Puritans of Boston engaged in the slave trade as soon as they had any commerce at all,

12. Religion.—The Protestant Church of England was established by law ; attendance at the service was made compulsory ; Protestants of other denominations were fined or expelled ; “novelties” in religion were forbidden ; all “popish priests” were to be sent out of the colony within five days after their arrival ; and Lord Baltimore, who visited Jamestown on a tour of observation, was promptly ordered away because he was a Catholic.

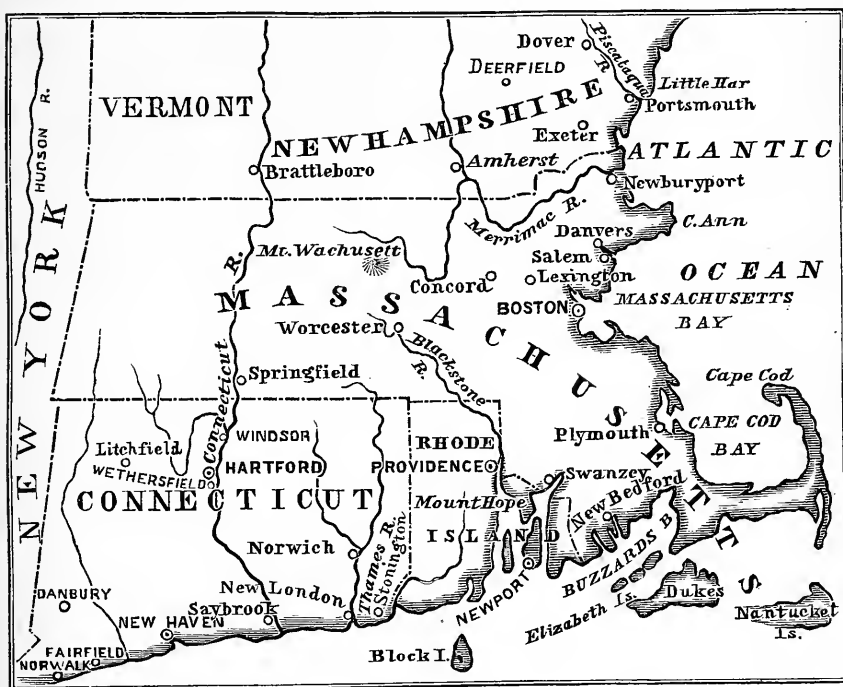
QUESTIONS.

1. What was granted to the Virginia colony in 1621 ? To whom was authority confided ? Under what restraints ?
- 2, 3. Describe the Indian massacres under Opecancanough.
4. Why was the London Company dissolved ?
5. How did the colonists now conduct their government ? What change occurred under Charles II. ?
6. What oppressive laws were enforced against the colonists ? What was their effect ?
- 7, 8. Give an account of Bacon's Rebellion.
9. What was the character of the Virginia settlers ?
10. What was the laboring class ?
11. When and how were slaves introduced ?
12. What is said of the religion of the settlers ?

CHAPTER VII.

NEW ENGLAND—THE PILGRIMS—STATE AND CHURCH—THE QUAKERS
—ROGER WILLIAMS.

1. **Captain John Smith in New England.**—New England was so named at the suggestion of Captain John Smith, who made a successful trading and fishing voyage to that part of the country in 1614, and drew a map of the coasts. Hunt,



MAP OF NEW ENGLAND.

the captain of one of Smith's two vessels, carried off twenty-seven Indians and sold them as slaves in Spain, where some of them were ransomed by a pious confraternity and sent home.

2. **The Great Patent.**—After several feeble attempts at

settlement, the Plymouth Company obtained from King James I. in 1620 a new concession, since known as the "Great Patent." Forty persons were incorporated as the Council for New England, with full powers of government and privileges of trade within the territory extending from latitude 40° to latitude 48° , or from the middle of New Jersey to St. John's, Newfoundland.

3. The Pilgrims.—The first permanent settlement, however, within the limits of their grant was made without their help by a company of English Puritans, who thus became the fathers of New England. The Protestant Church of England, having rebelled against the authority of the Holy See, persecuted with almost equal severity the other Protestant sects and the Catholics. The name of Puritans was given to a party of Protestants who refused to follow the established form of worship, because they said it retained too many of the ceremonies of Rome. At first they agreed in most particulars with the doctrines of the government church, though after a while their beliefs were greatly changed.

4. Many of the Puritans fled to Holland in order to avoid the tyranny of the crown. In 1608 a number of Puritans from Nottinghamshire, making their escape from England with difficulty and loss, settled in Amsterdam, and thence, with their pastor, John Robinson, removed to Leyden. Not liking their hard life in Holland, they turned their thoughts towards America, and after various negotiations obtained a patent from the Virginia Company. To enable them to settle under this grant, a number of the Pilgrims, as they are now called, formed a joint-stock partnership with certain London merchants for the establishment of a trading, fishing, and planting company; the merchants to furnish the money, the labor of every adult emigrant to be considered equivalent to one share of £10, and all the profits to be divided at the end of seven years.

5. They sailed from Delft Haven in July, in a small vessel called the *Speedwell*, and at Southampton the greater part

of them went aboard a larger ship, the *Mayflower*. The *Speedwell* proved unseaworthy and put back, and it was not until September 6, 1620, two months before the organization of the Council for New England, that the *Mayflower* alone sailed from Plymouth with one hundred and two Pilgrims, men, women, and children, led by Elder William Brewster.

6. Landing of the Pilgrims.—On the 11th of November



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

they cast anchor in what is now the harbor of Provincetown, on Cape Cod, Massachusetts. This was far outside the limits of the Virginia Company, and, their patent being here of no use to them, they framed a scheme of government for themselves. Before landing they drew up a written agreement "covenanting and combining themselves together into a civil body politic," and chose John Carver as governor.

7. Exploring parties examined the sandy peninsula and

the opposite shore of the mainland, and on December 11 (old style, or December 21 new style) they chose for their home the site of what is now the town of Plymouth, Massachusetts. The 22d of December is wrongly observed as the anniversary of the landing; but it was not until December 25 (old style) that the passengers disembarked on a rock still shown at Plymouth, and began the first house for their common use. It

was nearly three months before shelter was ready for all, and meanwhile many of them lived on the ship. They named the settlement New Plymouth.

8. New Plymouth.—

Like nearly all the first adventurers in America, they were ill-provided for life in the wilderness. They had little to eat except scanty and irregular supplies of fish, and nothing to drink except water. At one time their store of corn was so small that, being divided, it gave only five kernels to each person. About half the



MILES STANDISH.

emigrants perished during the winter. Governor Carver died in the spring, and William Bradford was elected his successor. Miles Standish, who had served as a soldier in the Low Countries, was entrusted with the military defence.

9. Fortunately, the first Indians whom the colonists encountered were well disposed, and they made a treaty of friendship with the powerful chief Massasoit, whose home was at Pokanoket, now Warren, Rhode Island. When Canonicus,

the chief of the Narragansets, sent them a bundle of arrows tied with the skin of a rattlesnake as a message of enmity, Bradford stuffed the skin with powder and ball, and sent it back as a defiance. Canonicus thereupon treated for peace.

10. In the summer the colony revived; food became abundant; and in November (1621) the ship *Fortune* arrived, bringing a reinforcement of thirty-five persons. In the autumn of 1622 a day was appointed to render thanks for a fruitful harvest, and this is the earliest mention of the New England festival of Thanksgiving.

11. Disputes in the Colony.—The New Plymouth people were soon vexed by internal dissensions. Although they had left England on account of religious persecution, they had no idea of granting to others the liberty of worship which they claimed for themselves. A preacher named Lyford was arrested for holding service according to the forms of the Church of England, and, together with one Oldham, was banished from the colony.

12. The result of these troubles was a quarrel among the London merchants who were partners with the Pilgrims in the joint-stock enterprise. The company was dissolved; the colonists bought out the rights of the other shareholders for about \$9,000, divided the property among themselves, and became an almost independent community.

13. Lyford and Oldham established themselves at Nantasket (now Hull); other stations were soon formed at Cape Ann, Naumkeag (Salem), and all along the coast of Massachusetts Bay. A colony of roystering adventurers, led by Thomas Morton (1625), set up a tall May-pole in the midst of their settlement at Mount Wollaston, known as Mare Mount, or Merry Mount (Quincy, near Boston), and so shocked the Puritans by their disorderly behavior that an expedition from New Plymouth dispersed the establishment and cut down the pole. Morton was shipped to England.

14. The Massachusetts Company.—The original Plymouth colony never attracted more than a handful of settlers, but a

new establishment was soon made close alongside of it which prospered rapidly. In 1628 the Council for New England granted to John Endicott and five associates the territory from three miles south of the Charles to three miles north of the Merrimac River (that is, from Boston to the New Hampshire line), and the next year a royal charter was obtained for



CUTTING DOWN THE MAY-POLE.

the colony in the name of the Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England.

15. A few months later the company transferred the governing power from London to the colony itself by choosing officers from those stockholders who proposed to emigrate, while those who remained in England kept only a partial control of the trade. After this important change a great number of emigrants came out. The first of them settled at Naumkeag, to which the name of Salem was now given. En-

dicott was already there as governor. Charlestown was founded by an offshoot from this body. In 1630 about one thousand settlers came out with John Winthrop as governor, and a part of them founded Boston, naming it in honor of the town of Boston, in Lincolnshire, to which many of them belonged.

16. State and Church.—Although they were chartered only as a trading corporation, the real purpose of the colonists was to establish Puritan communities, in which they could enforce their own theories of religion and politics without molestation from the English Church or the crown. Like the Plymouth Pilgrims, they professed at first to be children of the Established Church who believed in its doctrines but protested against “popish” corruptions in its forms of worship ; but by degrees they adopted a severe Calvinism.

17. A large proportion of them were gentlemen of education, means, and good social position. The greater part belonged to the substantial middle class which furnished the strength of the popular party in politics and the independent party in the English Church. There were four ministers in the company which came out with Winthrop.

18. Immediately upon their arrival the colonists proceeded to found their civil government upon the church. Congregations were organized in each settlement, and only those who had been admitted to membership in them were allowed the privileges of citizenship and of voting. Membership was not easily granted ; not more than a fourth part of the adult population ever obtained it under the Puritan rule, and generally the proportion of voters was much less than a fourth. The preachers could exclude candidates for church-membership whose opinions or conduct they distrusted, and they exercised great authority in both secular and spiritual affairs.

19. Baptism was a privilege confined to church-members and their children. Marriage was celebrated by the magistrates instead of the church, and the civil authorities had power to grant divorces as they saw fit. The magistrates

had power to enforce religious observances and to collect taxes for the support of the clergy. Amusements were forbidden. Gayety was looked upon as wicked. To keep any of the Christian holidays was called "idolatrous," and it was reckoned a sin to eat mince-pie at Christmas.

20. Intolerance.—Far from believing in freedom of worship, the constant effort of the Puritans was to exclude from the settlements of Massachusetts Bay all who dissented from their opinions. Among themselves they maintained a sturdy independence of the English crown, but towards others they exercised a terrible tyranny. They punished with imprisonment, banishment, scourging, or other penalties, both those who wished to preserve the forms of the English Church, those who taught novelties of their own, and those whom they regarded as "secret papists," or otherwise "unfit to inhabit" the colony.

21. Quakers were persecuted with especial severity. They were put in chains, barbarously whipped, branded, ruined by heavy fines, shipped to England or Barbadoes, scourged at the cart's tail from town to town, many of the victims of the flogging being women. Four were hanged, one of them a woman named Mary Dyer. Two little children were ordered to be sold as slaves in the West Indies to pay the fines of their parents.

22. Jesuits were forbidden to enter the colony, and if they came a second time after being expelled they were to be punished with death. It used to be the practice of the Puritans, up to the time of the Revolution, to show their hatred of the Catholic Church by publicly burning an effigy of the Pope. Soon after taking command of the troops before Boston, General Washington issued an order severely condemning this "ridiculous and childish custom."

23. Roger Williams.—A young preacher named Roger Williams, who came out in 1631, was obliged to leave Boston on account of his theological views, especially for denying the authority of the magistrates in matters of religion.

Banished likewise from Salem, he fled to the wilderness in midwinter, in order to escape being transported to England, and found refuge and kind treatment with Massasoit.

24. After suffering many hardships he founded the town of Providence (1636), and set up the first congregation of Baptists in America. The colony composed of his followers was governed at first as a simple democracy, everything being decided by the votes of the majority; but in 1643 Williams obtained a charter in England. This was the origin of the State of Rhode Island. Williams professed the principle of toleration in religion, but the laws of Rhode Island, as of nearly all the colonies, contained provisions against the Catholics.



ROGER WILLIAMS.

25. Mrs. Anne Hutchinson.—Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, who disturbed the church in Boston by instituting meetings of women to discuss theology and teaching that all believers are inspired by the Holy Ghost, was banished (1637), together with several who shared her opinions, and her adherents were required to surrender all the arms in their possession, for fear they “might upon some revelation make a sudden insurrection.” Finding refuge at first near Roger Williams in Rhode Island, the exiles afterwards removed to the protection of the Dutch, in what is now Westchester County, New York, in order to get further away from the Puritans. Mrs. Hutchinson and her family were there murdered by the Indians.

26. Spirit of Independence.—Without much regard to their charter, the Puritans cultivated the habit of self-government, and became very jealous of English interference. They were fanatical, narrow-minded, despotic, and cruel; but they were industrious, enterprising, and self-reliant. They practised trades, built ships, opened schools, founded Harvard College in 1638, and set up a printing-press in 1639, which was the first in the English-American colonies, though not the first in America, the earliest books printed on this continent having been issued by the Spaniards in Mexico.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was New England named?
2. Under what concession did the Plymouth Company prepare to plant colonies?
3. Who made the first settlement within their limits? Who were the Puritans?
4. From what place did the Puritan settlers remove to America? What arrangements did they make for a settlement?
5. Describe their voyage.
6. Where did they come to anchor? What did they do before landing? Why was this necessary?
7. When and where did they finally land? What did they call their settlement?
8. What were their experiences during the winter?
9. Their relations with the Indians?
10. What good fortune befell them the next season?
11. What cause for dissension existed among the colonists?
12. What was the result of these troubles?
13. What of Lyford and Oldham? Of Thomas Morton?
14. What new colony was planted under the Great Patent? What was its title?
15. What change was made in the government? Where did the first colonists settle? What large party came out in 1630? What place did they found?
16. What was their real purpose in emigrating? What was their religion?
17. What was their character?
- 18, 19. Give an account of their system of government.
20. Of their intolerance.
21. How did they treat Quakers?
22. What were their laws respecting Jesuits?
23. Why was Roger Williams banished?
24. What is said of the settlement of Rhode Island? Of the laws?
25. Why was Mrs. Hutchinson banished? What became of her?
26. Mention the principal good and bad qualities of the Puritans.

CHAPTER VIII.

NEW HAMPSHIRE—MAINE—CONNECTICUT.

1. New Hampshire and Maine.—New Hampshire and Maine were founded under a grant from the Council of New England soon after the landing of the Pilgrims. John Mason was the leading man in the New Hampshire adventure, and Sir Ferdinando Gorges in that of Maine. Both territories were claimed by Massachusetts. New Hampshire became a separate province in 1680, but Maine continued to be under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts until 1820.

2. Catholic Missions in Maine.—The English settlements in Maine were long confined to a few fishing-stations on the coast, and there were no towns. French missionaries, however, from Acadia and Canada labored with great success among the Indians. The Capuchins had an establishment at Pentagoet (Castine), on the Penobscot, where they built a chapel as early as 1648; and the Jesuit Father Druillettes founded a mission among the Abenakis at Norridgewock, on the Kennebec, in 1646. Almost the whole of this tribe was converted and always kept the faith.

3. Connecticut.—The Housatonic and Connecticut rivers were discovered by a Dutch navigator, Adrian Block (1614), the year after the first occupation of Manhattan Island, and the Dutch soon began a trade with the Indians on the shores of Long Island Sound. In 1633, having purchased land from the natives, they built Fort Good Hope on the Connecticut, near the present site of Hartford.

4. The English, claiming all this country, lost no time in trying to crowd the Dutch out. Settlers from New Plymouth, Newtown, and Dorchester founded Hartford, a mile and a half above the Dutch fort, Windsor, and Wethersfield; and in 1639 met in convention at Hartford and adopted a written constitution.

5. In the meantime persons in England—Lord Saye and Sele, Lord Brooke, John Hampden, John Pym, and others—had obtained a grant as lords proprietors of all the coast one hundred and twenty miles west from Narraganset Bay, embracing the whole of Connecticut and more than half of Rhode Island. John Winthrop the younger (son of the governor of Massachusetts), Hugh Peters, and Henry Vane were appointed commissioners of the lords proprietors, and sent a party by water from Boston to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River. The fort was named Saybrook, in honor of two of the proprietors.

6. New Haven was founded in 1638 by a party of Non-conformists under the Rev. John Davenport. They had recently emigrated from England to Boston, but, not liking the religious peculiarities of the Puritans of the Massachusetts colony, they determined to establish a community of their own. They admitted none but members of the church to share in the government, resolved to have no legislation except what they could find in the Bible, and were even stricter than the other New England colonists. Their strange rules have been the objects of ridicule under the name of the Blue Laws; but the account generally given of those laws is greatly exaggerated.

QUESTIONS.

1. How were New Hampshire and Maine settled?
2. What is said of the Catholic missions in Maine?
3. Who were the earliest settlers in Connecticut?
4. How did the English regard the coming of the Dutch? What did the New England people do?
5. What grant was made to a new English association?
6. Who founded New Haven? When? Give an account of their government.

CHAPTER IX.

NEW NETHERLAND—CHARACTER OF THE DUTCH COLONY—NEW JERSEY.

1. Dutch Settlements.—The Dutch settlers of New Netherland at first kept on good terms with the Indians and built up a large trade in furs. The merchants who directed the business in Holland were incorporated by the name of the Dutch West India Company (1621), having powers of government.

2. In 1623 thirty families of Walloons, or Protestants from the Belgian and Flemish provinces, were sent out to make a permanent colony. Some settled at Fort Orange, where Albany now stands (Fort Nassau, built near this place in 1614, had been abandoned); others removed to the Delaware and Connecticut Rivers; and others laid the foundation of Brooklyn (1625).

3. Governor Peter Minuit (*min'-u-it*) in 1626 bought the whole of Manhattan Island of the Indians for \$24, and built Fort Amsterdam on the present site of the Battery. Around this post grew up the city of New York. The settlement was called New Amsterdam, and was made the capital of the colony. This was six years after the landing of the Pilgrims and four years before the founding of Boston.

4. To encourage the formation of trading and farming settlements the company granted extraordinary privileges to any of its members who would take out colonies of fifty or more persons at their own expense. Under this regulation villages were planted all along the Hudson. The proprietors were known as "patroons," or patrons, and governed their territories like feudal lords—a system which led to disputes and conflicts lasting for several generations.

5. The Swedes.—In consequence of dissensions between the patroons and the company Minuit was recalled. He thereupon entered the service of Sweden, and in 1638 sailed

with a colony of Swedes to the Delaware River, where he built a fort near the present site of Wilmington, Delaware, and another on an island just below what is now Philadelphia.

6. The second governor of New Netherland was Wouter van Twiller, and he was succeeded by William Kieft, under



PETER STUYVESANT.

whom in 1643 a barbarous attack was made by the colonists upon the Indians at Hoboken, and one hundred and twenty savages were massacred in the night. This led to a terrible Indian war which lasted more than two years. Kieft was recalled, and replaced by Peter Stuyvesant (*sti'-ve-sant*), a brave and able but arbitrary man, who kept peace with the savages, and in 1655 compelled the Swedes on the Delaware

to submit to the Dutch authority. Thus New Sweden was annexed to New Netherland.

7. The English king, Charles II., gave to his brother, the Duke of York (afterwards James II.), the whole territory from the Connecticut to the Delaware, and James sent out a fleet under Col. Nicolls to take possession of the gift (1664). Stuyvesant wished to resist, but the Dutch inhabitants would not fight, and the English, of whom there were many in the colony, declared for their countrymen. New Netherland accordingly passed peaceably into English possession, and in honor of the duke the name of New York was given to the town and province. The other settlements on the Hudson and the various Dutch villages in New Jersey and Delaware promptly capitulated. Nine years afterwards a Dutch fleet entered the Bay of New York and easily regained possession

of the town. It was restored to England, however, at the end of the war then going on between that country and Holland.

8. Character of the Colony.—At the time of the surrender to Nicolls the province contained 10,000 inhabitants scattered far and wide along the Hudson and Delaware Rivers, on Long Island and in New Jersey, and New Amsterdam had a population of about 1,500. The Dutch settlers had emigrated merely for the purpose of making money, and without any reference to politics or creed.

9. According to law, no religion except that of the Reformed Dutch Church was to be tolerated, but the law was not strictly enforced, and many other Protestant sects were admitted into the colony. There were even a few Catholics in New Amsterdam. Father Jogues and Father Bressani, the Jesuit missionaries, after suffering unheard-of tortures at the hands of the Mohawks, were ransomed by the Dutch at Fort Orange (Albany), and kindly entertained by Governor Kieft at New Amsterdam. Father Jogues relates that he heard the confessions of two Catholics whom he found at Fort Amsterdam in 1643. The only denominations, however, which were allowed to celebrate worship in public were the Reformed Dutch, the Swedish Lutherans, and the Church of England.

10. New Jersey.—The Duke of York conveyed the territory between the Hudson and Delaware Rivers to Lord Berkeley (brother of the governor of Virginia) and Sir George Carteret (1664), and it was named New Jersey after the Island of Jersey, in the English Channel. The Quakers soon afterwards bought the rights of Lord Berkeley and settled West Jersey, while Carteret retained East Jersey, which became Puritan.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the early policy of the Dutch settlers?
2. Who were the Walloons? Where did they settle?
3. What price did Governor Minuit pay the Indians for Manhattan Island? What fort did he build? What was the settlement called?

4. Who were the patroons? 5. What settlers did Governor Minuit bring to America in 1638? Where did he establish them?

6. What occurred under Governor Kieft? What did Governor Stuyvesant accomplish?

7. What grant did King Charles II. make to the Duke of York? How did New Netherland pass into English hands? What change was made in its name? Did it ever revert to the Dutch? 8. What is said of the colonists? 9. Their religion? 10. How was New Jersey founded?

CHAPTER X.

THE CATHOLIC COLONY OF MARYLAND—LORD BALTIMORE—FREEDOM OF WORSHIP DESTROYED BY THE PROTESTANTS.

1. Lord Baltimore.—The first colony established in America on the principles of freedom and self-government in politics and equal treatment for all in religion was the Catholic colony of Maryland.



CECIL CALVERT, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE.

Sir George Calvert, a gentleman of Yorkshire, a Secretary of State under James I., and one of the original members of the London Company of Virginia, resigned his offices when the Puritan party became violent in England, and declared himself a Catholic. James seems to have respected his courage, for soon afterwards he was created Lord Baltimore.

2. Calvert had previously established a colony in Newfoundland just after the landing of the Pilgrims at New Plymouth, and offered a refuge there to Catholics and other persecuted persons. In search of a milder climate and a more generous soil, he visited Jamestown, but he was turned away

on account of his religion. Finally, in 1632, he obtained from Charles I. a grant of unoccupied land north of the Potomac, and named it Maryland in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria, and to this territory he resolved to transplant at his own cost a large colony of Catholics and such other persons as chose to join them.

3. The patent was prepared by his own hand, but he died before it received the royal signature, and it was issued to his son, Cecil Calvert, second Lord Baltimore. The proprietor was created absolute lord of the province, and empowered to make all necessary laws, but he stipulated of his own accord that no laws should be valid without the consent of the freemen of the colony or their representatives in assembly. The right of originating laws and of taxing themselves was also given to the settlers.

4. Departure of the Colony.—About twenty Catholic gentlemen joined Lord Baltimore, and these, with servants and laborers, two Jesuit priests, Father Andrew White and Father John Altham, and two lay brothers, John Knowles and Thomas Gervase, made a party of nearly three hundred. Lord Baltimore was detained in England, and committed the expedition to his younger brother, Leonard Calvert, as governor, with Jerome Hawley and Thomas Cornwallis as his councillors.

5. They sailed from Cowes, in the Isle of Wight, with the ship *Ark* and the pinnace *Dove*, committing them to the protection of God, the Blessed Virgin, St. Ignatius, and the guardian angels of Maryland. Following the long route by the West Indies, they sighted Virginia after a stormy voyage of three months. They sailed up Chesapeake Bay, and on the Feast of the Annunciation, March 25, 1634, they landed on an island (one of the Blackstone Islands, now partly washed away), which they called St. Clement's. Mass was celebrated, and then with great solemnity they set up a large cross and recited a litany.

6. St. Mary's.—After spending two days in exploring the

Potomac and making friends of the natives, Calvert chose a place for his settlement on a little stream which flows into the Potomac on the north side, near its mouth, where there was already an Indian village. He bought of the savages their whole village, wigwams and all, and thirty miles of land, paying in axes, hatchets, rakes, and cloth. The colonists occupied the Indian huts till they could build houses, and one



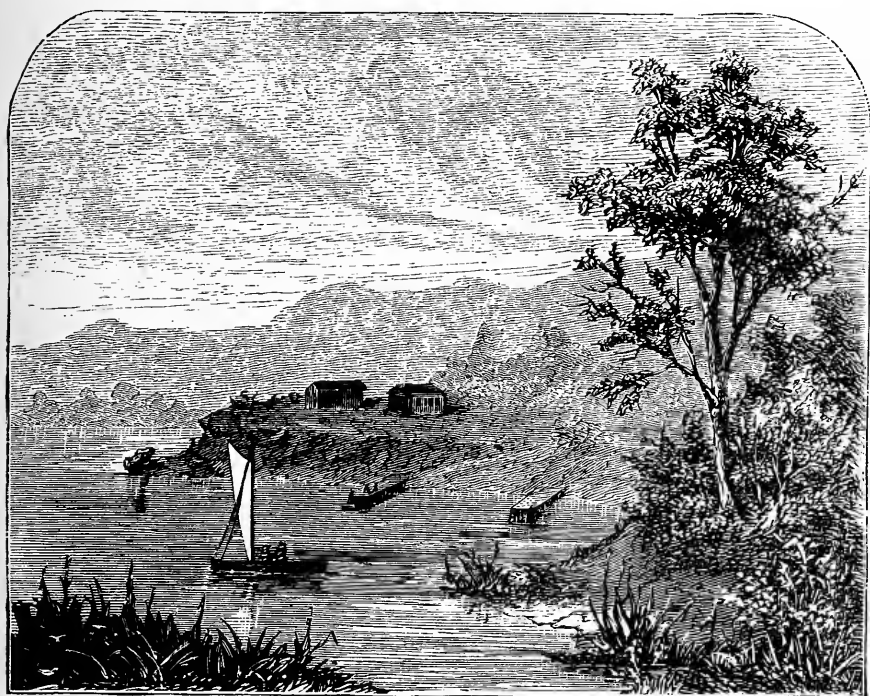
THE LANDING OF THE MARY AND CATHOLICS.

of the best of them they used as a chapel. They gave the town the name of St. Mary's.

7. The settlement prospered. A crop of maize was gathered the first summer, and the Indians taught the colonists how to prepare it for food and how to trap game. Before winter all were comfortably sheltered. A church was soon erected on the high bank of the river. The Jesuits, joined by others of their order, devoted themselves to the spiritual wants of the settlers and the conversion of the Indians; in

six months St. Mary's made more progress than Virginia had made in six years; good order, morality, and industry prevailed; and in less than a year after their landing the colonists met in general assembly to make laws for themselves.

8. Although the founders were Catholics, and the Catholic faith was the prevailing religion of the colony, there were many Protestants—servants and laborers—in the first party that came out, and others followed them from England, some



PRESENT APPEARANCE OF ST. MARY'S.

becoming converted after their arrival. The policy of Lord Baltimore, as well as of the colonists themselves, was not to interfere with anybody's creed.

9. A refuge was offered at St. Mary's to all Protestants who fled from the Protestant intolerance either of Puritanism in Massachusetts or of the Church of England in Virginia. The governors appointed by the lord proprietor were re-

quired to take an oath to maintain religious equality; and after a few years a formal act of toleration was passed, by which all Christians were to be protected against molestation on account of their creed. There never was any departure from this rule as long as Maryland remained Catholic, and it was a rule that prevailed nowhere else. We shall see that, as a consequence of this generosity, the Catholics became the victims of Protestant persecution in their own colony, and the freedom which they had established was destroyed.

10. Troubles with Virginia.—At the time of Calvert's arrival a trader named Clayborne was established on Kent Island, in Chesapeake Bay, within the limits of the Maryland grant. Clayborne refused to acknowledge the authority of Calvert, and, being sustained by the Virginians, who always regarded the Maryland colony with hostility, he maintained an open warfare with the government at St. Mary's. A number of Puritans, expelled from Virginia, had accepted the hospitality of the Maryland Catholics, and now turned against their protectors, allying themselves with the partisans of Clayborne, and obliging Calvert to flee from the province (1644). Two years later the governor came back with a body of troops and re-established his authority.

11. Puritans and Catholics.—It was three years after this (1649) that the Catholic Assembly of Maryland passed the act of toleration which earned for the colony the name of "land of the sanctuary." Protestants and Catholics were admitted to office on equal terms, and, some time after the death of Leonard Calvert, Lord Baltimore appointed Stone, a Protestant, as governor. The greater part of the Puritans had established themselves at Providence, near the present site of Annapolis, and a separate county, called Anne Arundel, was organized for them in 1650. As they increased in numbers Charles County was also formed for them. They were always turbulent and insubordinate.

12. After the execution of Charles I. and the establishment of the Commonwealth, the Parliament sent out commis-

sioners to look after "the plantations within Chesapeake Bay" (1652), which had acknowledged Charles II. One of these commissioners was Clayborne, the old enemy of the colony. With the aid of the Puritans Governor Stone was deposed and imprisoned (1655), several of the adherents of Lord Baltimore were hanged, Clayborne was reinstated at Kent Island, and a new government was set up, one of whose first acts was to exclude all "papists and prelatists" from the benefits of the statute of toleration, and to declare that no Catholic should sit in the Assembly or vote for members of it.

13. For three years the province remained in a state of civil war. One government was established at St. Mary's under the authority of Lord Baltimore's patent, and another at Providence under the authority of the Puritan commissioners. The rights of the proprietor were restored on the accession of Charles II., and Lord Baltimore's brother, Philip Calvert, became governor. The act of toleration was now revived in its full extent, and the colony remained at peace until the ascendancy of Protestantism was secured in England by the revolution which dethroned James II. and set up William and Mary.

14. The year after that event (1689) a Puritan named Coode raised an insurrection in Maryland, and, spreading a lying report that the Catholics had made a league with the Indians to massacre the Protestants, he organized an "Association in arms for the defence of the Protestant religion," marched upon St. Mary's, captured the fort of St. Inigoe (St. Ignatius), and called a convention, which declared the authority of Lord Baltimore forfeited.

15. Two years later the king revoked the grant to the proprietor and made Maryland a royal province. The capital was removed from St. Mary's to Annapolis. The Church of England was made the established religion of the colony; the Catholics were disfranchised; and thus the founders of Maryland were violently and ungratefully deprived of the privileges they had been the first to grant to other people.

16. In 1715 Benedict Charles Calvert, the fourth Lord Baltimore, being a Protestant, recovered the proprietary rights, and they remained in the family until the Revolution. No justice, however, was shown to the Catholics. In 1704 an "Act to prevent the increase of popery in the province" made it an offence to say Mass except in private houses, to exercise any other function of the priesthood, or attempt to make converts. Catholics were forbidden to teach. They were taxed twice as much as Protestants. After a while they were forbidden to approach within one hundred yards of the state-house. Most of the oppressive penal statutes continued in force until 1774. The Jesuit missions, however, survived all persecutions and became the foundation of the American Church.

QUESTIONS.

1. For what is the Maryland colony distinguished? Who was Sir George Calvert?
2. Where did he first establish a colony? What grant did he obtain from Charles I.? For what object?
3. What popular provisions were inserted by Lord Baltimore in his charter?
4. How was the first Maryland colony composed?
5. When did it sail? Where did it land? What were the first acts of the emigrants?
6. Describe the purchase from the Indians. What was the town called?
7. Describe the progress of the settlement.
- 8, 9. What was the practice with respect to differences in religion?
10. Give an account of Clayborne's rebellion?
11. Why was Maryland called "land of the sanctuary"? How did the Puritans in Maryland conduct themselves?
12. What happened under the rule of the Parliament? What was done by the new government?
13. How did the Restoration affect the colony?
14. What was Coode's insurrection?
15. What was done under William III.?
16. How were Catholics treated under the Protestant ascendancy? What is said of the Jesuit missions?

CHAPTER XI.

INDIAN TROUBLES—KING PHILIP'S WAR.

1. The New England Settlers and the Indians.—The Puritan settlers of New England took little pains to Christianize the Indians, although one of the first Boston preachers, the Rev. John Eliot, devoted a long life to missionary enterprises among the red men, and won great influence over them. It was partly owing to his work that peace was kept for several years. At last the powerful and warlike confederacy of the Pequods in Connecticut plotted a general massacre of the whites, and the settlers determined upon war.

2. An expedition composed of Connecticut and Massachusetts men under Mason and Underhill, some friendly Mohegans led by their chief, Uncas, and two hundred Narragansets under Miantonomoh, marched in May, 1637, against one of the principal Pequot strongholds.

3. This was a village surrounded by a fortification of trees and brushwood. The Pequods were surprised in their sleep, but they fought bravely until Captain Mason, crying out, "We must burn them!" thrust a fire-brand into one of the wigwams, setting the whole village in flames. The attack now became a massacre, the whites keeping up the fight within the fort, while their Indian allies struck down those who attempted to escape. A fortnight later the remnant of the Pequods were pursued to the swamps in which they had taken refuge, eight or nine hundred were killed or taken, and the confederacy was entirely broken up.

4. The United Colonies.—For better protection against Indian attacks, and for the advancement of their interests in general, a confederation of "The United Colonies of New England" was formed in 1643 by delegates from Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, who met at Boston with the

General Court of Massachusetts. Commissioners from each colony were to meet alternately at Boston, Plymouth, Hartford, and New Haven. The confederacy was important as the first step towards union, but it was dissolved after some years without accomplishing what was expected of it.

5. King Philip's War.—An attempt was made to revive the union in 1675 when a new and more terrible Indian war broke out, under the leadership of the great chief of the Whampano'ags, known to the whites as King Philip. He was the nephew and successor of Massasoit (see p. 52). The rising soon become general; even the Narragansets were involved in it; Brookfield, Northfield, and Deerfield were burned; the people of outlying settlements abandoned their homes and fled to the larger towns; small parties of troops on the march were cut off and destroyed. The Indians were more dangerous than ever before, because many of them were now armed with muskets.

6. In December, 1675, an expedition under command of Josiah Winslow, Governor of Plymouth, attacked and carried a strong fort of the Narragansets in what is now the town of South Kingston, Rhode Island. The scenes of the Pequod massacre were repeated, many of the Indians perishing in their burning village; but the colonists also suffered severely, and the war continued with redoubled horrors, until Philip was killed and his head carried in triumph to Plymouth.

7. The General Court of Massachusetts regarded the war as a punishment for the sins of the people, and among the principal offences they mentioned pride, profanity, cheating, the wearing of long hair by men, and toleration of Quakers. Besides calling out troops, they consequently caused the persecution of the Quakers to be renewed.

8. Hostilities lasted more than a year. The colonists lost six hundred men in battle, besides many persons massacred in the settlements. Twelve or thirteen towns were entirely ruined and others were partly burned. The losses

in money were about a million dollars. On the other hand, the power of the savages was for ever broken. More than two thousand were killed or captured, and most of the captives were either hanged or reduced to slavery. From this time the tribes in New England fast dwindled away.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of Puritan missions among the Indians? What savage confederacy plotted a massacre of the New England settlers?
2. What force was despatched against them?
3. Describe the attack. What was the end of the war?
4. What union of colonies was formed in consequence of Indian attacks?
5. What savage enemy next made war upon the whites? What is said of the burnings and massacres?
6. How was the war brought to a close?
7. To what did the Massachusetts authorities ascribe their disasters?
8. What were the losses on each side?

CHAPTER XII.

THE CAROLINAS—GEORGIA—WILLIAM PENN—PENNSYLVANIA.

1. **The Carolinas.**—Between the English settlements of Virginia and the Spanish posts in Florida lay a vast tract which both nations claimed but neither had yet colonized. Spanish missionaries, however, had penetrated into this region, and the Franciscans had stations and settlements of Christian Indians from Florida almost to the English frontier, which lasted until the English broke them up.

2. In 1663 Charles II. erected this disputed territory (now North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, and part of Florida) into the province of Carolina, and gave it to eight of his favorites, at the head of whom was the prime minister, Clarendon. The famous English philosopher, John Locke, drew up a complicated scheme of government for the province, providing for a feudal nobility and other aristocratic institutions, great power for the lords proprietors, and the establishment of the Church of England. It was nominally in force for about twenty years, but many of its regulations were never carried into effect, and the scheme as a whole was a failure.

3. The first settlements under the Clarendon grant were made in North Carolina, then called the Albemarle County Colony, in 1664, many of the early settlers coming from Barbadoes. South Carolina, or the Carteret Colony, was founded in 1670. It received emigrants from New York, Holland, Scotland, the North of Ireland (Presbyterians); and later came many French Huguenots, whom the other adventurers did not treat very kindly. Slaves were introduced from Barbadoes in 1671.

4. **Georgia.**—The settlement of Georgia was a consequence of the efforts of General Oglethorpe, a member of

the House of Commons, to improve the condition of prisoners for debt, and other unfortunate persons who wished to begin a new life. A popular agitation was started in support of his project. George II. made a grant of territory, money was raised by subscription, and in 1732 Oglethorpe sailed with the first emigrants. Savannah was founded the next spring. The early settlers included Jews, German Protestants, Moravians, and Scotch Highlanders. A free exercise of religion was guaranteed to all "except papists." Like the other Southern colonists, the Georgians soon learned to depend upon the labor of negro slaves.

5. All the Southern settlements passed through great troubles, owing partly to misgovernment and partly to the turbulence and incapacity of the colonists. After many disorders the Carolinas became royal provinces in 1729 and took the distinctive names by which they are now called. Georgia became a royal province in 1752. Alabama, which then formed a part of it, was not set off until after the Revolution.

6. The Quakers.—Members of the sect of Quakers, or Society of Friends, showed themselves in the colonies as early as the middle of the seventeenth century, and everywhere, except in Catholic Maryland, they were treated with extraordinary severity. Even the easy-going Dutch of New York persecuted Quakers while they spared every other denomination. It was among the Puritans of Massachusetts that they were most brutally outraged. (See p. 56.)

7. William Penn.—We have already seen that after a while they bought lands of their own in New Jersey. A few years later William Penn, one of the most distinguished converts to the sect, a man of wealth and family, and son of a famous English admiral, secured for his brethren in religion a still more important establishment. He obtained from King Charles II., in payment of an old debt due from the crown to the Penn family, a charter for a colony west of the Delaware, to which was given the name of Pennsylvania

(1681). The charter was copied from that of Maryland, with some alterations. Lands were sold to settlers at about ten cents an acre; and many privileges of self-government were offered to them.

8. Settlement of Pennsylvania.—The first party of emigrants sailed in 1681. Penn followed them in 1682; in the course of the first year no fewer than twenty-three shiploads arrived, and in two years the population amounted



THE PENN TREATY.

to 7,000, including the settlers who were already on the ground when the new colony was organized. A few weeks after his arrival Penn held a conference with a large assembly of the Indians, under an elm-tree at Shackamaxon, in what is now Kensington, Philadelphia, and formed with them a treaty of friendship. This treaty was never broken and the kindly intercourse between the Quakers and the savages was rarely disturbed.

9. The same year Penn founded the city of Philadelphia, whose name signifies "brotherly love," and summoned a legislative assembly, whose first session was held at Chester. Before his return to England (1684) he established a representative government and a code of laws. The first emigrants were mostly Quakers, including some from Germany and Holland, but toleration was promised to all Christians. This pledge does not appear to have been regarded as applying to Catholics, yet they were not molested; a number of Irish Catholics were among the early arrivals, and Mass was celebrated in Philadelphia in 1686.

10. Penn was involved in political troubles in England; his province was taken from him, and for two years (1692-94) Pennsylvania was ruled by the royal governor of New York. Then the rights of the proprietor were restored. He made a second visit to America, and at the demand of the people, who wished for greater political privileges, he granted a new charter. In 1779 the State of Pennsylvania bought all the rights of Penn's heirs for about \$500,000.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of the country between Virginia and Florida? Of the missionaries?

2. What was the Clarendon grant? Who drew up a scheme for the government of the colony?

3. Who were the first settlers?

4. How was Georgia settled? Who were the first settlers? What was the law respecting religion?

6. What is said of the Quakers in America?

7. Who was William Penn? What did he do in the interest of the Quakers?

8. How did he treat the Indians?

9. What city did he found? What kind of government did he establish? What is said of toleration? Were there any Catholics among the early settlers?

10. How was the province governed after it was taken from Penn? Were his rights restored? What did he do on his second visit to America?

CHAPTER XIII.

THE COLONIES AND THE CROWN—THE CHARTER OAK—LEISLER'S REBELLION IN NEW YORK—"THE NEGRO PLOT"—SALEM WITCHCRAFT.

1. The Colonies and the Crown.—Charles II. in the latter part of his life wished to destroy the liberties of the American colonies and take their government into his own hands. The despotic character of the Puritan rule in Massachusetts, the arrogance and intolerance of the Puritan churches, and the extreme boldness of some of their political claims gave him grounds for annulling the Massachusetts charter in 1684. He died the next year, leaving his brother, James II., to carry his plans further.

2. Sir Edmund Andros, who had previously been governor of New York, arrived in Boston at the end of 1686 with the title of Governor-General of New England. New York and the Jerseys were soon added to his jurisdiction. The first important act of his administration which provoked the resentment of the Puritans was the publication of the royal Declaration of Indulgence, granting toleration to Quakers, Baptists, Episcopalians, and other Protestant sects, as well as to Catholics. Thus religious tyranny in New England received its death-blow from a Catholic king.

3. The Charter Oak.—All the New England colonies which still had charters were ordered to give them up. As Connecticut refused, Andros marched to Hartford with sixty soldiers to seize the document by force (1687). He entered the hall where the Assembly was in session in the evening. The charter was brought out and laid on the table, but when Andros was about to take it the lights were suddenly put out and the document disappeared. It had been carried away by the colonists and hidden in a hollow tree, and Andros never found it. The tree, known as the Charter Oak, was carefully preserved for nearly two hundred years. It was blown down in 1856.

4. On the accession of William and Mary the people deposed Andros, and the colonies resumed their charters by their own authority. For some time King William was too busy with troubles at home to pay much attention to them. He was by no means disposed, however, to concede any liberties to the Americans. To the bills of rights which the provincial assemblies hastened to enact he returned decided and repeated negatives. He sent over some of the same tyrannical governors who had been employed by James, and others who were no better.



HIDING THE CHARTER.

5. **New York.**—The Duke of York had allowed the people of New York in 1683 to meet in assembly, at the call of the governor—Thomas Dongan, a Catholic—and enact a code of fundamental laws known as the “*Charter of Liberties*,” which claimed for the people the right to rule and tax themselves, to vote, and to practise any form of the Christian religion without molestation. This was the first legislative assembly of New York. As soon as he became king, however, James began to exercise the same arbitrary authority in New York which he asserted in New England.

6. **Leisler’s Rebellion.**—When James was dethroned, Jacob Leisler, a rich German citizen of New York and captain in the militia, put himself at the head of a fanatical party of the lower class of the people, and took possession of the fort and the public money “for the preservation of the Protestant religion” (June, 1689).

7. The cause of this insurrection was in great part a

bigoted hatred of Catholics. The most absurd stories were circulated about plots of the "papists" to cut the throats of the inhabitants, and the revolt began with the refusal of Leisler to pay his taxes, on the ground that the collector was a Catholic. There were three Jesuit priests in New York at this time, and for a little while they even had a Latin school in the city. This school was on what was known as King's Farm, near the present site of Trinity Church. Leisler's anti-Catholic outbreak occurred at the same time as the similar Protestant insurrection under Coode in Maryland.

8. King William appointed Colonel Henry Sloughter governor of New York, and on his arrival, in March, 1691, Leisler and his son-in-law and secretary, Milbourne, were arrested, tried for high treason, and hanged. His death exasperated party spirit, and the feud between the enemies and friends of Leisler continued to disturb the politics of New York for many years.

9. **Religious Affairs.**—The accession of William established in the colonies the policy of complete toleration for all Protestant sects and exclusion of Catholics. The New York Assembly of 1691 repealed the Charter of Liberties, and enacted a Bill of Rights which excluded Catholics from the privileges it conferred upon others. An act of 1700, passed by the exertions of the governor, Lord Bellamont, declared that every priest found in the province should be liable to perpetual imprisonment. If he broke jail and were retaken he should suffer death. The penalty for harboring a priest was a fine of £200 and three days in the pillory. In 1701 Catholics were declared incapable of voting or holding office.

10. The anti-Catholic feeling reached its height in 1741, when the city of New York was thrown into a panic by rumors of a conspiracy of the negroes to burn the houses and massacre the inhabitants. A full pardon and a large reward in money being offered to all who would confess, the terrified slaves began to tell the most extraordinary and hor-

rible stories, and the excitement was soon increased by a foolish letter from Governor Oglethorpe, of Georgia, transmitting a report that the Spaniards had sent priests in disguise to set fire to the principal towns in the English colonies.

11. The cry of a "popish plot" was now raised, and a schoolmaster named John Ury was arrested on suspicion of being a priest. Denounced by one of the purchased witnesses, a low woman of infamous character, as an accomplice in the imaginary conspiracy, he was hanged, August 29, 1741, after a mock trial. He was probably what he professed to be, a non-juring minister of the Church of England. Eighteen negroes were hanged, eleven were burned at the stake, and fifty were transported to the West Indies.

12. **Salem Witchcraft.**—A delusion of another kind was raging in Massachusetts about the time of Leisler's insurrection in New York. The Puritans of New England believed in witches from the first, and made witchcraft punishable with death. Six or eight persons supposed to be witches were executed between 1648 and 1655. In 1688 the fear of witches became a popular excitement and led to the greatest excesses.

13. The panic began in the family of John Goodwin, a citizen of Boston, whose children pretended to have been bewitched by an old Irishwoman. The case was investigated by the Rev. Cotton Mather and other ministers; the old woman was found to be a Roman Catholic who spoke Irish and could not say the Lord's Prayer except in Latin, and she was adjudged a witch and hanged. Cotton Mather preached against witchcraft, and, like his father, Increase Mather, president of Harvard College, wrote books on the subject which greatly increased the delusion.

14. In 1692 the disorder appeared at Salem, where the daughter and niece of the Rev. Mr. Parris accused two friendless old women, and a squaw named Tituba, of bewitching them. All three were sent to prison. On the word of children and the malicious accusations of enemies a number of women and a few men were thrown into jail; a town

committee was formed to search for witches, and a special court was organized at Salem for the trial of the accused.

15. In one year twenty persons had been executed, eight were under sentence of death, one hundred and fifty were in prison, and many of the suspected had fled the country. A reaction now set in. The prisoners were released, and some of the judges and ministers acknowledged that they had been deluded.

QUESTIONS.

1. What did Charles II. wish to do with the American colonies? What gave him an excuse for annulling the Massachusetts charter?

2. What change of administration was made under James II? What was the Declaration of Indulgence published by Governor Andros?

3. Tell the story of the Charter Oak.

4. What occurred on the accession of William and Mary?

5. What were the principal features of the New York Charter of Liberties?

6, 7. Give an account of Leisler's Rebellion and its cause.

8. How did it end?

9. What policy in religion was adopted on the accession of William? What laws were passed against Catholics in New York?

10. What caused a panic in New York in 1741? What increased the alarm?

11. Who was John Ury? What was his fate? How many other victims suffered?

12. What delusion broke out in Massachusetts?

13. How did the panic begin?

14. Give an account of the progress of the delusion.

PART SECOND.

COLONIAL WARS.

CHAPTER XIV.

FRENCH AND ENGLISH RIVALRIES—ENTERPRISES OF THE FRENCH— KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

1. French Settlements—We have seen that the French from Canada penetrated into what is now the State of New York some years before the Dutch established themselves on Manhattan Island, and that Jesuit missionaries planted villages of Christian Indians along the shores of the great lakes and the valley of the Mississippi. The English settlers during this period made no attempt to explore the interior, and supposed the continent to be quite narrow.

2. It was about the time of the settlement of Massachusetts Bay that the Jesuit Fathers, who had already been laboring for many years among the Algonquins and Hurons of Canada and New York, began to push their explorations westward with a new zeal and enterprise, accompanying, and often leading, the Canadian fur-traders on their long journeys, and establishing kindly intercourse with many of the tribes.

3. Jogues, Daniel, Lalemant, Brebeuf, Garnier, Chabanel, and others (including some Recollects) were martyred. Allouez made known the copper-mines of Lake Superior. Dablon and Marquette founded Sault Ste. Marie, the first white settlement in the Northwestern States. Marquette, accompanied by the trader Joliet, first reached the Mississippi, the priest seeking a new field for missionary enterprise, and the fur-trader being commanded by the governor of Canada to look for a route to the South Sea. The French trader and adventurer, La Salle, under orders of the Canadian governor,

Frontenac, explored the Mississippi to its mouth, and took possession of the country in the name of the king of France. It was then (1682) that this region received the name of Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV.

4. English Jealousy.—The English settlements thus became enclosed by a line of French colonies and outposts, extending from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia up the valley of the St. Lawrence, through the region of the great lakes, and down the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. It seemed doubtful at that time whether the whole continent was not destined to become French rather than English, and the strength of the French was greatly increased by the fact that through the influence of the missionaries and their own prudent policy they had made many of the Indian tribes their fast friends and allies.

5. The English settlers looked upon their French neighbors with jealousy and alarm. In New York especially, where the French priests had established so many villages of Indian converts, the bad feeling was very strong, and the English governor, Dongan, although a Catholic himself, tried to detach the savages from their missionaries (promising to send them English Jesuits instead); he furnished arms to the warlike Iroquois, and encouraged them to attack the French, with whom they were never long at peace. In the course of the hostilities thus begun the missions were broken up, many of the converts removing into Canada, and the French settlers suffered severely.

6. King William's War.—These Indian troubles had lasted several years when King James II. was dethroned (1688), and, as the French king espoused his cause, war broke out between France and England. The colonies were at once involved in the quarrel, and fighting between them lasted for seven and a half years. This is known as King William's War.

7. Both the French and English colonists made use of Indian allies, and the warfare was marked by the most barbarous excesses. Instigated by the French, the savages

burned Dover, New Hampshire, and ravaged the settlements of Maine. A force of French and Indians from Montreal surprised Schenectady at night (Feb. 8, 1690), massacred sixty persons, and carried off twenty-seven prisoners. Other Canadian expeditions of whites and Indians captured Salmon Falls, in New Hampshire, and Casco, in Maine.

8. On the other hand, the English colonists armed the fierce Mohawks and led a mixed expedition against Canada which failed. Sir William Phipps, with a Massachusetts fleet, made a descent upon Acadia, but was defeated in an attempt upon Quebec. Colonel Church fought a successful campaign against the Indians of Maine, in the course of which he put prisoners to death, not even sparing women and children. The Indians sometimes retaliated, but generally carried their prisoners to Canada and sold them to the French as servants. The captives suffered greatly on the march, but were kindly treated in Canada.

9. A treaty of peace between France and England in 1697 put an end to the war in America. Both parties had suffered severely, and neither had gained any real advantage. The English colonists had been obliged to depend entirely upon their own resources, the home government doing nothing for them.

QUESTIONS.

1. 2. Give a brief account of the progress of the Jesuit missionaries. 3. Name some of the Jesuit martyrs. What did Father Allouez make known? What river was reached by Father Marquette? What is said of La Salle? 4. By what were the English settlements surrounded? How did the French increase their power? 5. What was the feeling of the English settlers towards the French? What was their policy in New York? 6. What was the cause of King William's War? 7. What Indian depredations and massacres were instigated by the French? 8. How did the English retaliate? What is said of Colonel Church in Maine? 9. What put an end to the war?

CHAPTER XV.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR—FATHER RALE—KING GEORGE'S WAR.

1. Queen Anne's War.—The war between France and England being renewed in 1702, the colonists were again involved, and the contest which ensued is known as Queen Anne's War. Spain being now in alliance with France, the English found themselves menaced from Florida as well as from the North. The French had grown stronger during the five years' peace, and their project of a great French-American empire seemed more promising than ever.

2. The first operations were directed against the Spaniards of Florida. St. Augustine was captured (1702) by Governor James Moore, of South Carolina, but he did not hold it. Three years later, at the head of fifty whites and one thousand pagan Indians, he fell upon the Christian Indian settlements of Middle Florida, where the Appalachees, under the instruction of Spanish missionaries, had become farmers and herdsmen. The villages and churches were destroyed, and the converts, to the number of two thousand, were forcibly removed to Georgia.

3. New England suffered severely. Deerfield, Massachusetts, was burned by a party of French and Indians (1704), forty-seven of the inhabitants being killed and more than a hundred carried into captivity. Haverhill, hardly recovered from the massacre of 1697, was pillaged and burned a second time. England for a long time sent no help.

4. The colonists, however, repulsed a French and Spanish attack upon Charleston, captured Port Royal (1710)—the name of which they changed to Annapolis—and threatened the unfortunate Acadians with expulsion from their homes unless they would turn Protestants.

5. Expedition against Canada.—At last in 1711 a fleet of

fifteen ships of war and forty transports, with five veteran regiments of Marlborough's army, arrived at Boston to co-operate with the colonists in an attempt to capture Canada. New York, Massachusetts, and Pennsylvania raised large sums of money and a strong force of men; the fleet, under Admiral Sir Hovenden Walker, with an army of seven thousand soldiers under General Hill, sailed up the St. Lawrence for Quebec, and the colonial troops and Indian allies assembled at Albany for a simultaneous attack upon Montreal. A part of the fleet, however, was wrecked in the St. Lawrence with the loss of one thousand lives, whereupon the admiral at once abandoned the expedition and weakly returned to England.

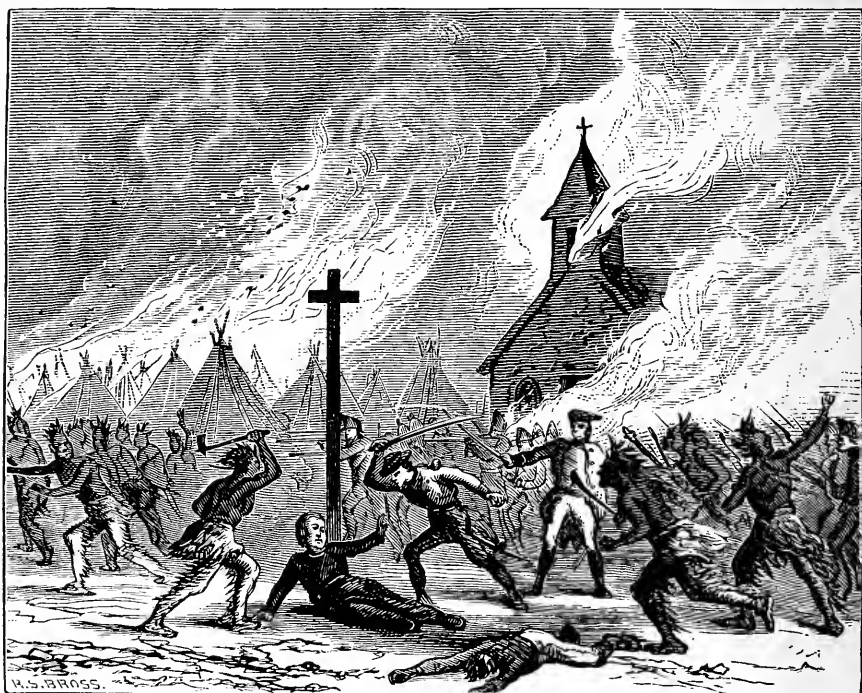
6. End of the War.—England had been more fortunate in the European campaigns than in America, and by the peace of Utrecht, signed in 1713, she acquired Newfoundland and Acadia, the latter province being thenceforth known as Nova Scotia.

7. Troubles on the Maine Frontier.—Disputes arose with the French about the boundaries of the ceded province of Acadia, and also with the Indians on the Penobscot and Kennebec, who resented the intrusion of English settlers upon lands which they regarded as their own. There was soon open war between the New-Englanders and the Indians. Many of the Abenakis of this region had long been Christians. The missions founded among them nearly seventy-five years before this time by the Capuchins and Jesuits had continued to flourish; and the famous Jesuit Father Rale was still laboring at Norridgewock, where he had been settled for nearly thirty years.

8. This zealous man was especially hated by the New-Englanders, who accused him of exciting the hostility of the Indians and keeping alive French influence in the disputed territory. They burned Norridgewock during Queen Anne's War, but it was rebuilt. They tried to persuade the Indians to send Father Rale away and take a preacher in his stead,

but the proposal was indignantly repelled. They offered a reward for his head. In 1722 an expedition was secretly despatched by the governor of Massachusetts to seize him. The missionary escaped to the woods, where he nearly perished in the snow, but all his property was carried off and the village was plundered. The manuscript of an Abenaki dictionary by Father Rale was a part of the spoil, and is still preserved at Harvard College.

9. Death of Father Rale.—In August, 1724, another ex-



MURDER OF FATHER RALE.

pedition of New-Englanders, aided by Mohawk warriors, surprised Norridgewock and poured a volley of musketry into the village. Father Rale went forth to meet the assailants, hoping by the sacrifice of his own life to secure the escape of his converts. He was shot down at the foot of the mission cross, and the victors, after hacking his body to pieces, rifled the altar, profaned the Host and the sacred ves-

sels, and burned the church. Thirty of the Indians were killed and the rest took flight.

10. King George's War.—In 1744 France declared war against England, and, as usual, hostilities at once broke out in the American colonies. As this happened in the reign of George II., the campaign is known as King George's War.

11. Massachusetts took the lead, furnishing most of the men and ships for an attack upon the strong French fortress of Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island. Other colonies contributed to the enterprise; the animosity of the Puritans against French Catholics was inflamed, and a Methodist minister who accompanied the troops was provided with a hatchet to hew down the images in the "popish" chapels.

12. Under the command of William Pepperell, of Maine, the colonists compelled Louisburg to surrender (June 17, 1745), after a siege of six weeks, and Massachusetts then proposed to the British government to raise a colonial army which might reduce Canada. But the crown took alarm at the independent spirit of the Americans, and would only allow them to menace Montreal while a British fleet and army should attack Quebec.

13. This project came to nothing, owing to the failure of the promised co-operation from England! On the other hand, a powerful French fleet sailed to recover Louisburg; but, shattered by two terrible storms and further disabled by an outbreak of fever, it returned home in distress. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1748) put an end to the war and restored Louisburg to France.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the war called which broke out in 1702? What enemies had the English colonies now to face?
2. Where did hostilities begin? What is said of Governor Moore's treatment of the Christian Indians of Florida?
3. What disasters occurred in New England?
4. What successes did the colonists obtain in the South and in Nova Scotia?

5. What enterprise did the British government at last attempt in America? Give an account of the expedition.
6. What American territory did the English acquire by the treaty of peace?
7. What troubles occurred in Maine? What is said of the Abenaki mission?
8. What is said of Father Rale? What was the object of the Massachusetts expedition against Norridgewock in 1722?
9. Give an account of Father Rale's death.
10. What was the third colonial war called? Why?
11. What was the principal expedition of the campaign?
12. How did it result? What did Massachusetts then propose? Why did the British government refuse its consent?
13. How was the Canadian campaign defeated? What was the result of a French attempt to recover Louisburg? What was done by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle?

CHAPTER XVI.

THE FRENCH IN THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY—PROGRESS OF THE ENGLISH COLONIES—THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR—GEORGE WASHINGTON—BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

1. Rivalries with the French.—The previous hostilities between the French and English colonies had originated in the quarrels of the mother countries; but soon after the close of King George's War a new and much more severe struggle began with the settlers themselves. It lasted until the supremacy of the English immigrants on this continent was finally established.

2. The French had never lost sight of their great scheme for the occupation of the Mississippi valley and the establishment of a line of settlements, forts, and trading-posts from the Gulf of St. Lawrence, along the great rivers and the lakes, to the Gulf of Mexico. Near the mouth of the St. Lawrence they had built the fortress of Louisburg, so strong that it was called the Gibraltar of America. Quebec likewise was

a place of great military importance. The Indian tribes of New York, who were kept friendly to the French, served as a defence for the settlements of Upper Canada. A French fort at Niagara commanded the communication between Lakes Ontario and Erie; and a French post at Detroit controlled the channel to the great upper lakes. Natchez was founded in 1716; and two years later Governor Bienville began the building of New Orleans, to which the capitol of Louisiana was soon removed from Mobile.

3. Thus the French controlled the valuable fur-trade of the whole Mississippi valley. Their adventurous traders traversed the long route of two thousand miles from Quebec to the Gulf of Mexico. Their missionaries pushed further and further into the wilderness, the Jesuits taking the upper part of the Mississippi valley and the Capuchins the lower.

4. Indian Wars.—Although the general policy of the French was to use the Indians as friends and allies, they did not always avoid wars and massacres. In 1729 the Natchez Indians fell upon the white settlers at Natchez, killed all the men except two, and made the women prisoners. Among the two hundred victims of this catastrophe were the Jesuit Fathers Du Poisson and Souel. The French in retaliation almost destroyed the Natchez nation. Afterwards they attacked the hostile Chickasaws of Alabama, who, being helped by the English, withstood them through two hard and indecisive campaigns, in the second of which the Jesuit Father Senat was burned at the stake.

5. Population.—While the French were strengthening their military position and extending their trade, they gained population very slowly. In 1715 Canada had only twenty-five thousand inhabitants. Two years later John Law, a Scotch financier living in Paris, set on foot the Mississippi Company for colonizing the French possessions in America. The result was a gigantic speculation in the shares of the enterprise, and finally a crash which involved the whole French nation in distress. America got little or no benefit from it.

6. Progress of the English Colonies.—The English colonies by this time had a population of about four hundred and fifty thousand. The neglect and injustice with which they were treated by the mother-country taught them self-reliance. Constant warfare with the savages made them bold and hardy. They learned to govern themselves, to watch their own interests, and to depend upon their own labor.

7. Until the middle of the eighteenth century the English did not attempt to settle or explore the regions lying beyond the Blue Ridge and the Alleghany Mountains, but in 1749 an association called the Ohio Company was organized for trade and settlement in the West, and agents were sent across the mountains to make treaties with the Indians. To oppose this adventure the French stirred up the Indians, strengthened the fort at Niagara, built another at *Presque Isle* (*presk-eel*), now Erie, established posts at *Le Bœuf* (*luh buff*) and Venango, now Waterford and Franklin, in Northwestern Pennsylvania, seized the English traders, and confiscated their goods.

8. Orders were now sent from England to the Virginians and Pennsylvanians to expel the French from their provinces. Virginia was under the authority of Lieutenant-Governor Robert Dinwiddie, who immediately despatched a messenger to the nearest French post to demand the release of the captured traders and indemnity for their losses, and at the same time to inquire into the purposes and strength of the French occupation. The agent whom he selected for this delicate mission was George Washington.

9. Washington.—Washington was at this time not quite twenty-two years old. He was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, February 22, 1732. His family was honorable and wealthy, and his ancestors for three generations had been settled in Virginia. George inherited from his father, who died when the boy was twelve years old, an estate on the Rappahannock, near Fredericksburg, and he lived there with his mother.

10. He had not many opportunities for education, but he was diligent and studious, and became a fair scholar. He learned surveying, and spent three years in the survey of an immense and unexplored domain belonging to Lord Fairfax in the Shenandoah valley. At the age of nineteen he was appointed a major in the militia. He was skilled in athletic exercises, strong, hardy, and a bold and graceful horseman. Already he was distinguished for a love of truth and justice, a high sense of honor, sound judgment, and dignified conduct.

11. **Washington's Mission to the French.**—He set out on his mission at the end of October, 1753, with only a guide and two or three attendants, and after a hard and dangerous journey of more than five hundred miles, mostly through an unknown wilderness infested by hostile savages, he reached the French post at Le Bœuf. The French commander, St. Pierre, received him politely, and promised to transmit the governor's demands and remonstrances to Montreal, but the officers of the post made no secret of the intention of their government to occupy the country permanently.

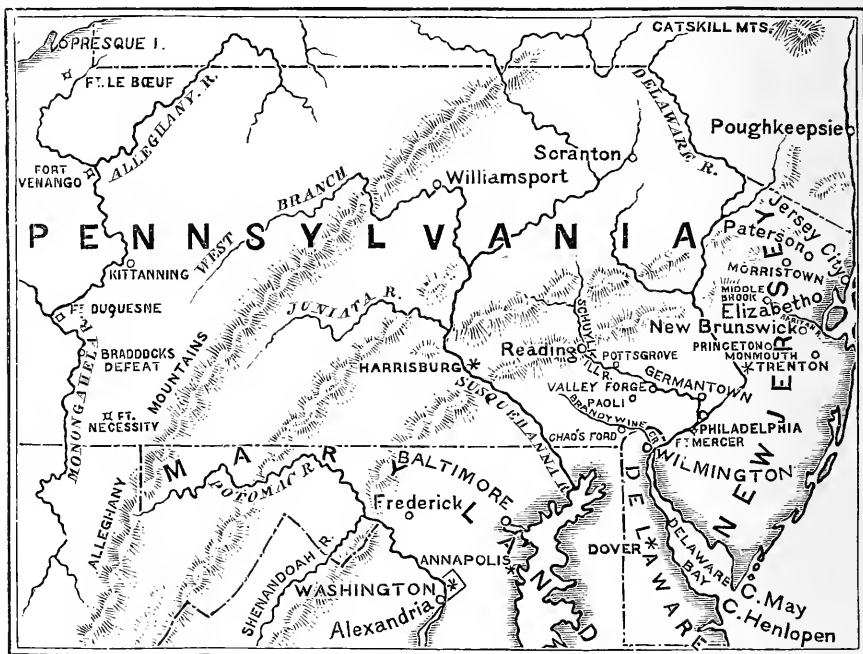


WASHINGTON CROSSING THE ALLEGHANY.

12. The return to Virginia was made still more perilous by the increasing severity of the winter and the hostility of the Indians. A part of the journey was made by canoe. At Venango, finding that their lives were in danger from the savages, Washington and his guide took to the woods on foot, with their packs on their shoulders and their guns in their hands. A treacherous Indian led them off the track and

attempted to kill them. They seized him, and the guide would have put him to death, but Washington saved him and let him go.

13. They found the Alleghany River half-frozen, and the mid channel filled with tossing cakes of ice. With no tools but "one poor hatchet" they built a raft after a whole day's labor, and were nearly drowned in trying to cross. Washington was hurled into the deep and rapid stream, but succeeded



MAP OF PENNSYLVANIA.

in reaching an island, where he and his companion passed the night. Their clothes froze to their bodies. By morning fortunately the whole river was frozen over, and they were able to continue the journey.

14. Washington's report made the purposes of the French so clear that there was a general preparation for war. By his advice Governor Dinwiddie sent a small party to begin a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, where Pittsburg now stands, and in the meantime a larger

force was got ready with the co-operation of New York and South Carolina. Of the regiment raised in Virginia, Fry was appointed colonel and Washington lieutenant-colonel.

15. Beginning of the French and Indian War.—They marched from Alexandria. On the way they learned that the French had seized the unfinished fort, completed it for themselves, and called it Fort Du Quesne (*du kane*) after the governor of Canada. An advance party under Washington surprised a detachment of the French at a place called the Great Meadows, and defeated them, the commanding officer, Jumonville, being killed (May, 1754).

16. Colonel Fry having died, the command devolved upon Washington. He built a stockade at the Great Meadows, which he called Fort Necessity, and here he was soon attacked by a greatly superior force. After a day's fighting he was compelled to give up the fort, retiring with all his arms and baggage to the Upper Potomac, where he built Fort Cumberland.

17. An Attempt at Confederation.—The English government having advised the colonies to unite for the general defence, delegates from New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland met at Albany, and on the 4th of July, 1754, adopted a scheme of confederation. This was important as a step towards the union accomplished twenty-two years later; but for the present the scheme was rejected. The colonial assemblies all refused to favor it because it gave too much power to the crown, while the royal government disapproved of it because it gave too much power to the colonies. The plan was drawn up by Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania and a zealous advocate of the people's side in politics.

18. Benjamin Franklin.—This distinguished man, who had so great a part in the struggle for American independence, was at this time forty-eight years old. He was the son of a soap and candle maker in Boston. Without much

schooling, he had contrived to give himself a good education, and, having been bound apprentice to his elder brother, James, who was the printer and editor of one of the earliest newspapers in Boston—the *New England Courant*—he used to write essays for the paper in a disguised hand, and drop them into the letter-box secretly. James Franklin published them without suspecting the authorship, and they attracted a great deal of attention.

19. James Franklin having been arrested on account of the political character of his journal (for there was no freedom of the press at that time), the *Courant* was published for some time by Benjamin. The brothers quarrelled, however, and Benjamin, at the age of seventeen, ran away from Boston, went first to New York, and thence made his way, almost penniless, to Philadelphia.

20. There he obtained employment in a printing office; he also worked for a year and a half at the printing trade in England; and after returning to Philadelphia he founded the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, and became a man of note in public affairs and a writer of ability, popularity, independence, and common sense. He established the celebrated “Poor Richard’s Almanac,” whose short proverbs and rules of frugality and prudence were copied all over America and Europe.

21. Applying himself to scientific studies, he made important discoveries in electricity and invented the lightning-rod. The fact that lightning and electricity are the same, which had been suspected by other philosophers, was clearly proved by his famous experiment with a kite, by means of which he drew down electricity from a thunder-cloud.

QUESTIONS.

1. How did the next colonial war differ from the preceding ones?
2. Describe the position of the French.
3. What did they control?
5. What is said of the French population?
6. Of the English population?

7. What was the Ohio Company? How did the French try to check this adventure? 8. What orders were sent from England? Who was the agent sent to the French outposts? 9, 10. Give a sketch of Washington. 11. Describe his journey to Fort Le Bœuf. 12, 13. His return. 14. What was done by Washington's advice? Who were the colonel and lieutenant-colonel of the Virginia regiment? 15. What happened at the Great Meadows? 16. What followed after Colonel Fry's death? 17. What was attempted at Albany? Why was the plan defeated? Who drew it up? 18. Who was Benjamin Franklin? 19, 20. Give an account of his career. 21. What important discovery did he make in science?

CHAPTER XVII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR CONTINUED—BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT— THE ACADIANS.

1. Braddock's Expedition.—The British government now determined to form a considerable army in the colonies, and sent out two regiments of regular troops, with General Braddock as commander-in-chief. The provincial assemblies raised a large number of men, and three expeditions against the French were planned, Braddock with his regulars marching against Fort Du Quesne, while the provincials were to operate in the north and east.

2. Braddock was accompanied by some Virginia rangers, and Washington, who knew the country and understood the French and Indian method of fighting, went with him as aide-de-camp. Braddock, however, held the provincials in too much contempt to listen to advice; and when Washington, who expected an Indian ambuscade, urged him to throw forward the Virginia rangers to scour the woods, the general angrily refused.

3. Suddenly an invisible enemy opened a murderous fire upon the advancing army. For a short time the British stood firm, but when sixty of their officers and more than half their men had been shot down they fell into a panic. Braddock

himself was mortally wounded, and died four days afterward. Nothing saved the defeated troops from complete destruction but the firmness of the despised provincials and the gallantry and coolness of Washington. Two horses were shot under him and four bullets passed through his coat (July 9, 1755).

4. The British force engaged in this affair was the advance division of thirteen hundred men, and the enemy comprised only two hundred French and six hundred Indians. Cannon and baggage were lost and quantities of stores were destroyed, and the whole army retired to Philadelphia.

5. **Operations in the North.**—General William Johnson, of New York, was appointed to attack Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, where the French had established themselves some years before. He defeated the French general, Dieskau (*dee-es-ko*), in the battle of Lake George (September 5, 1755), changing the name of the lake at this time from *St. Sacrement*, given it more than one hundred years before by Father Jogues, to that which it now bears, in honor of King George II.; but he could not reach Crown Point, and he even allowed the French to fortify Ticonderoga.

6. **The Acadians.**—At the east an expedition under Colonel Monckton, of the regulars, and Lieutenant-Colonel John Winslow, was despatched against the French posts which had been established in Nova Scotia on the Bay of Fundy. These capitulated (June, 1755) on condition that the inhabitants of the country should not be disturbed. The people, remnants and descendants of the Acadians of forty years back, and known as “French neutrals,” had always remained French in language and sympathies, and Catholics in religion. Attempts of the Canadians, however, to incite them to acts of hostility against the English had signally failed. They were simple, peaceable, pious, thrifty, and industrious farmers, blameless in their lives and strongly attached to their homes.

7. Uneasy on account of their French sympathies, and unwilling to bear the expense of garrisons to keep them in

order, the English resolved, in spite of the pledges of the capitulation, to transport them to the British provinces and scatter them far and wide. This shocking design was carried out with every aggravation of cruelty.

8. The scheme was kept a profound secret until all was ready to put the wretched people on board ship. "Assembled under various false pretences," says the historian Hildreth, "in their parish churches they were surrounded with



EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS.

troops, made prisoners, and hurried on board the ships assigned for their transportation. Wives separated from their husbands in the confusion of embarking, and children from their parents, were carried off to distant colonies, never again to see each other." Their lands and cattle were confiscated to the crown, their crops destroyed, the houses and barns burned with all their contents.

9. Every British colony received some of these destitute and heart-broken people, and most of them died in exile and despair. More than a thousand were carried to Massachusetts, where they were not even allowed to console themselves by the celebration of Mass. Four hundred who were sent to Georgia built rude boats, and tried to make their way northward along the coast to the French colonies; but few succeeded. The miserable story of the expulsion of the Acadians is the groundwork of Longfellow's poem of "Evangeline."

QUESTIONS.

1. What preparations did the British government make for the campaign?
2. What is said of Braddock and Washington?
3. What occurred on the march? What saved the party from complete destruction?
4. What were the losses?
5. What was done by General William Johnson in the North? What is said of the name of Lake George?
6. What expedition was undertaken in the East? Who were the Acadians? What is said of their character and conduct?
7. What did the British resolve to do with them?
8. How was the plan carried out?
9. What became of the exiles? In what famous poem is their story told?

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE MINISTRY OF THE ELDER PITT—THE STRUGGLE FOR CANADA—
MONTCALM AND WOLFE—FALL OF QUEBEC—RESULTS OF THE WAR
—THE CONSPIRACY OF PONTIAC.

1. Campaign of 1756.—In May, 1756, England formally declared war against France, and both sides prepared for fresh exertions in America. The French obtained a decided advantage by superior promptness and generalship. The gallant and able Marquis of Montcalm had been appointed to the chief command ; and before the British were ready to move he crossed Lake Ontario from Fort Frontenac (now Kingston, in Canada), demolished the forts at Oswego, carried off prisoners, guns, stores, and boats, and so alarmed the colonies that all the military expeditions they had planned were given up.

2. Campaign of 1757.—The British government, as usual, mismanaged everything that it undertook in the colonies. The Earl of Loudon was sent out with extraordinary powers, both military and political, and he used them only to exasperate the people and provoke quarrels in the army. He sailed against Louisburg in the summer of 1757 with a large force of regular troops and a British fleet, but, finding the French stronger than he had supposed them, he retired without striking a blow.

3. The watchful Montcalm took advantage of Lord Loudon's absence to make a sudden descent upon Lake George. He captured Fort William Henry and destroyed it, allowing the garrison to march out with the honors of war. On their retreat the disarmed soldiers were attacked by Montcalm's Indian allies, and many of them were massacred in spite of the efforts of the French officers to save them.

4. Change of Policy.—After four years of war the advantage still seemed to be with the French, although their colo-

nies counted hardly 100,000 inhabitants, while the English had 1,500,000. But when the celebrated statesman, William Pitt, afterwards created Earl of Chatham, came to the head of affairs in 1757, a great change began. The arrogant and incompetent Loudon was superseded by General Abercrombie, 12,000 troops were sent to America, besides a powerful fleet, and Pitt so raised the spirit of the colonies that they voted heavy taxes and enlisted even more than the 20,000 men asked of them.

5. A land force under General Amherst, with a fleet of forty ships under Admiral Boscawen, was now despatched against Louisburg, which surrendered in July, 1758, after a defence of seven weeks. An expedition, commanded by Abercrombie himself, against Fort Ticonderoga, was less fortunate, for Montcalm, with a much smaller army, defeated it in a severe battle. A detachment from Abercrombie's force, however, captured Fort Frontenac, with its garrison and shipping.

6. A third expedition started for Fort Du Quesne, but it made little progress until Washington with his Virginians was placed in the advance. On his approach the French set the fort on fire and fled; but the damage was soon repaired, and the victors renamed the post Fort Pitt, in honor of the British minister.

7. **The Conquest of Canada.**—Pitt's plans for the campaign of 1759 looked to the final reduction of Canada, and the colonists, whom he had treated with justice and consideration, gave him a hearty support. Amherst, who had succeeded Abercrombie in the chief command, captured Ticonderoga (July, 1759), and Fort Niagara, three days later, surrendered to General (now Sir) William Johnson. But the most important movement was against Quebec.

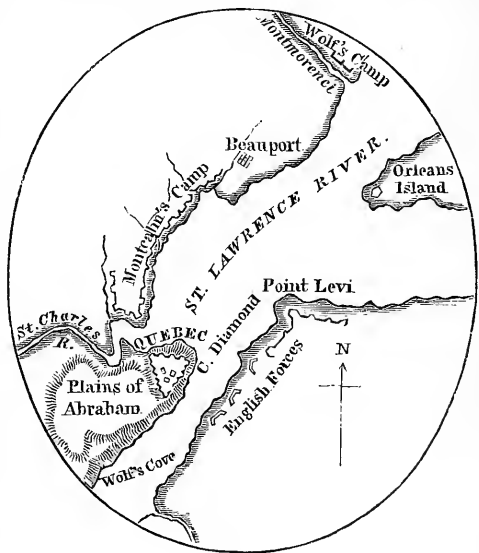
8. This expedition was entrusted to General James Wolfe, a brilliant young officer, who had greatly distinguished himself at the siege of Louisburg, where he was second in command. He ascended the St. Lawrence with an army of eight thou-

sand men and a fleet of more than forty vessels, and formed two camps, one opposite Quebec, the other on the north or Quebec side of the river, nine miles below. The French, about equal in strength to the English, and commanded by Montcalm himself, were entrenched between this second camp and the city.

9. Montcalm's best defence was the position of the city. Quebec consisted of an upper town, with citadel and fortifications, occupying the top and slopes of a steep and high peninsula, and of a lower town built on the narrow shore at the foot of this promontory. The elevation is called the Heights of Abraham, and the level summit in the rear is known as the Plains of Abraham.

10. Fall of Quebec.—The siege had lasted for two months, without important advantage to either side, when Wolfe determined upon a most daring expedient. He had discovered in the steep bank above the town a narrow ravine with a winding foot-path. Not imagining that an enemy could approach by such a difficult pass, the French had only a small guard at the top; yet by this road Wolfe determined to lead his soldiers to the heights.

11. The ships, carrying about half the army, moved up the river several miles beyond the ravine, and a pretence was made of disembarking at several points. But after dark the troops took to the boats and with muffled oars dropped silently down the St. Lawrence with the falling tide. They reached the landing without being discovered, and clambered up the



QUEBEC.

heights, supporting themselves by the branches of trees, and before daylight on the 13th of September they were drawn up in order of battle on the Plains of Abraham.

12. Montcalm could hardly believe the news which was brought to him in his camp below Quebec, but he hurried up with all the force he could muster. After an hour of cannonading, and an unsuccessful attempt by Montcalm to turn the left of the British and force them into the river, the French made an impetuous charge upon the English line. The veteran troops of Monckton withstood the onset. At Wolfe's command they reserved their fire until the enemy was within forty yards, when they poured in a steady and murderous discharge of musketry. The French wavered. Montcalm, wounded early in the action, was present everywhere encouraging his men, until, while attempting to rally a body of fugitive Canadians, he fell mortally wounded, and was carried off the field.

13. Wolfe and Montcalm.—Wolfe was shot twice while leading a charge. A third bullet pierced his breast. "Support me," he said to an officer next him; "don't let my brave fellows see me drop." As he was carried to the rear he heard the cry, "They run, they run!" "Who run?" he asked. "The French," was the answer; "they give way everywhere." Wolfe roused himself enough to give an order for cutting off the retreat, and expired exclaiming, "Now, God be praised, I die happy!"

14. Montcalm, being told that he had only a few hours to survive, replied: "So much the better; I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." He pointed out to his officers how they might collect troops to renew the attack, and then to the commander of the garrison, who asked his advice about surrendering the city, he said: "To your keeping I commend the honor of France. As for me, I shall pass the night with God and prepare myself for death." He wrote a letter recommending the French prisoners to the generosity of the victors, and died at five the next morn-

ing, having devoted his last hours to the care of his soul. A monument to commemorate the heroism of both Wolfe and Montcalm was afterwards erected on the battle-field, and another stands within the city.

15. Five days later (Sept. 18) Quebec surrendered. The contest was prolonged for a year yet, but Wolfe's victory was the death-blow to the French power in America. In September, 1760, the French governor-general, Vaudreuil, surrendered to General Amherst the city of Montreal and the whole of Western Canada, it being stipulated in the capitulation that the inhabitants should be protected in their property and religion.

16. End of the War.—This was the end of the war between the British and French colonies in North America, though peace was not restored between France and England till the signing of the Treaty of Paris, February, 1763. By this agreement, to which Spain and Portugal were also parties, the French surrendered all their possessions in North America. Everything east of the Mississippi River, except the town of New Orleans, was relinquished to England. New Orleans and that part of Louisiana beyond the Mississippi were ceded to Spain. In exchange for Havana, which had been captured by the British, Spain yielded Florida to England. In 1800 Spain restored Louisiana to France, and in 1803 Napoleon sold it to the United States.

17. The Conspiracy of Pontiac.—The Indians, who had been living on good terms with the French traders and settlers, were greatly displeased at the transfer of the western country to the English. A chief of the Ottawas named Pontiac formed a conspiracy of the western tribes to fall upon all the English frontier posts from Virginia to the lakes in May, 1763. In less than a fortnight nearly the whole of that region was in the possession of the savages ; there was wide-spread massacre and pillage, and Pontiac himself besieged Detroit for five months. The siege having been raised by a large force of provincials, the tribes sued

for peace. Pontiac retired to the Illinois country and made a stand there for some time longer, finally submitting in 1766.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was the French commander in 1756? What were his first operations?
2. Who was the British commander? What is said of him?
3. What did Montcalm accomplish on Lake George?
4. Who gave a new turn to the English fortunes?
5. What occurred at Louisburg? At Fort Ticonderoga? At Fort Frontenac?
6. At Fort Du Quesne?
7. What was Pitt's plan for the campaign of 1759? What were the first movements?
8. Who commanded the expedition against Quebec? How were the two armies placed?
9. What was the position of Quebec?
10. How did Wolfe propose to reach the heights?
11. Describe his landing.
12. Give an account of the battle.
13. How did Wolfe die?
14. How did Montcalm die?
15. What was the result of the fall of Quebec?
16. What did the French surrender by the treaty of peace?
17. Give an account of the conspiracy of Pontiac.

PART THIRD.

THE REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER XIX.

CONDITION OF THE COLONIES AFTER THE WAR—RESTRICTIONS ON TRADE—THE STAMP ACT.

1. The Thirteen Colonies.—At the close of the French and Indian war there were thirteen English colonies in North America, not counting the possessions just won from France and Spain. They were: Massachusetts Bay, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. The population of the whole was a little less than 2,000,000, of whom 350,000 were negro slaves. Virginia had the most inhabitants, Massachusetts the most whites. The principal town was Boston.

2. The colonists had suffered a great deal during the wars, losing 30,000 soldiers, and spending \$16,000,000, of which the home government refunded only \$5,000,000. The peace found them with heavy debts, depreciated paper money, and prostrated industries. In this state of things the mother-country, instead of coming to their relief, laid upon them fresh exactions, which created general resentment.

3. Restrictions on Trade.—The policy of the English government was to make the colonies pay tribute to English merchants, and to prevent their manufacturing anything for themselves. The Navigation Acts made it unlawful for them to trade with any country except England. As it was found that the Americans were learning how to make good hats out

of American fur, the London hatters complained, and an Act of Parliament accordingly prohibited the transportation of hats from one plantation to another. When they began to manufacture iron for their own use, the British government ordered that "none in the plantations should manufacture iron wares of any kind whatsoever," and that mills, furnaces, etc., should be regarded as "nuisances."

4. Writs of Assistance.—In 1761 the government attempted to enforce the tyrannical Acts of Trade by the issue of "writs of assistance," or general search-warrants, which authorized officers of the customs to break into any store or private house and hunt for goods which they even suspected had not paid duty. The most violent opposition was excited to these writs in Massachusetts, where they were first granted. The colonists declared their liberties to be in danger, obedience was refused, and the legality of the warrants was tested in the court at Boston.

5. Here James Otis, the advocate-general of the crown, refused to defend the writs, resigned his office, and appeared in behalf of the people. His eloquent and courageous speech made a profound impression. "Otis was a flame of fire," said John Adams; "he carried away all before him. American independence was then and there born." The legality of the writs was finally upheld, but the officers did not venture to execute them.

6. The Stamp Act.—The British government had long desired to raise a revenue from the colonies, but no ministry had ever dared to lay a direct tax upon them. Pitt, however, who respected the rights of the Americans, had now been driven from office, and King George III. surrounded himself with courtiers and ministers who had no politics except to carry out his arbitrary designs. Under the influence of the court party Parliament passed a resolution declaring that it had authority to tax the colonies, and in 1764 the prime minister, Grenville, brought forward the scheme of a stamp tax to carry this doctrine into effect.

7. The colonists took the ground that they could not lawfully be taxed by a parliament in which they were not represented—in other words, that “taxation without representation is tyranny.” Samuel Adams and James Otis in Massachusetts; Patrick Henry in Virginia, became leaders in the popular movement. Benjamin Franklin was sent to England to oppose the scheme in the name of Pennsylvania. Colonel Barré made a speech against it in Parliament. The Stamp Act was nevertheless passed in March, 1765.

8. It declared that every document used in trade, as well as every legal paper, to be valid must have affixed to it a stamp, the lowest in value costing a shilling, and thence increasing in price according to the importance of the paper. As a precaution against resistance, the ministers were authorized to send as many troops as they saw proper to America, and oblige the colonies to supply them with “quarters, fuel, rum, and other necessaries.”

9. Resistance of the Colonies.—These acts caused a

burst of indignation in America. The Virginia Assembly passed resolutions introduced by the brilliant young

orator and patriot Patrick Henry, declaring that the General Assembly had exclusive right and power to lay taxes and impositions upon the inhabitants. His speech on the resolutions closed with a daring passage: “Cæsar,” he cried, “had his Brutus, Charles his Cromwell, and George the Third” —“Treason, treason!” cried some of the delegates—“George the Third may profit by their examples. Sir, if this be treason, make the most of it.”



PATRICK HENRY.

10. The resolutions of Virginia gave the signal for a general outcry. Massachusetts resolved that the courts should conduct their business without stamps, and invited all the colonies to send delegates to a congress, which met in New York in October, delegates from nine colonies being present. They drew up a declaration of rights, a memorial to Parliament, and a petition to the king, claiming that they could be taxed only by their own representatives. The colonial assemblies approved their proceedings, and thus was taken the first steps toward a federal union.

11. So alarming were the popular demonstrations, and so great the loss inflicted upon English merchants by the refusal of the colonists to buy any goods from them, that Parliament repealed the Stamp Act after a few months' vain trial (March 18, 1766). Pitt, Burke, Barré, and others in the House of Commons defended the action of the Americans, and Pitt declared that "if they had submitted they would have voluntarily become slaves."

QUESTIONS.

1. Name the thirteen colonies at the close of the French and Indian War. What was their population? Which was the most populous colony? The largest town?

2. What was the condition of the colonists at the peace? How did England treat them?

3. Mention some of the regulations as to trade.

4. What were the Writs of Assistance? How were they regarded by the people?

5. What is told of James Otis?

6. What resolution was passed by Parliament under the influence of the king?

7. What ground did the colonists take? Who were their leaders?

8. What was the Stamp Act?

9. What is said of Patrick Henry?

10. What measure did the colonies take?

11. How did the British government act in the face of this resistance?

CHAPTER XX.

THE BOSTON MASSACRE—DESTRUCTION OF TEA—THE BOSTON PORT BILL—THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

1. New Schemes of Taxation.—In spite of the failure of the stamp duty the ministry persevered in the attempt to tax the colonies, and a year after the repeal of Grenville's scheme a new act imposed duties on paper, tea, glass, etc. (June, 1767), in reply to which the Americans renewed their pledge not to import any British merchandise.

2. A Mutiny Act, which empowered the ministry to quarter soldiers on the colonists, increased the exasperation of the people. Massachusetts issued a circular letter to the other colonies, urging them to co-operate in efforts to obtain redress, and nearly all the assemblies passed resolutions denying the right of Parliament to tax them.

3. Popular Tumults.—Commissioners of Customs appointed under the new acts arrived at Boston in May, 1768. The next month they seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock, a popular leader and rich merchant, who had refused to pay the tax. A riot followed, and the commissioners fled for safety to a fort in the harbor. The government resolved to punish "the insolent town of Boston," and at the request of the royal governor, Bernard, a body of soldiers under General Gage was sent to occupy the place.

4. The Boston Massacre.—The soldiers and citizens had constant quarrels. At length, on March 5, 1770, a serious collision occurred between the troops and a mob, and the soldiers fired, killing three of the crowd and mortally wounding two others. The reports of this "Boston massacre," as it was called, were greatly exaggerated and filled the country with excitement.

5. The people demanded the removal of the troops from the city, and the trial of the captain and eight men of the guard on a charge of murder. The royal officers were

obliged to yield. Determined, however, to show the respect of the Americans for law and justice, two of the most distinguished of the popular leaders, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, defended the accused on the trial. Captain Preston and six of the privates were acquitted; the other two were found guilty of manslaughter and branded on the hand.

6. The Tax on Tea.—A change of ministry had now brought to the direction of affairs Lord North, a statesman who possessed many excellent personal qualities, but is chiefly remembered as the obedient servant of an obstinate king and the minister who lost America for the British crown. The firmness with which the colonists persevered in their non-importation policy had caused so much distress to British merchants that Lord North determined to remove all the duties except a tax of threepence a pound on tea. This was retained at the express command of the king, who said that “there should always be one tax, at least, to keep up the right of taxing.” He did not understand that it was against “the right of taxing” that the Americans were contending.

7. The tea-tax, brought forward by the ministry on the day of the Boston massacre, only excited the colonies to a still more earnest declaration of the principle that “taxation without representation is tyranny.” Besides pledging themselves to use no tea while the tax remained, they determined that none should be landed or sold. In the latter part of 1773 news came that three ships laden with tea were on their way to Boston. A meeting of 5,000 citizens resolved, on motion of Samuel Adams, to send the ships back. Governor Hutchinson refused to let the ships depart until the tea was landed. On the evening of December 16, while the citizens were assembled in mass meeting at Faneuil Hall, a band of fifty or sixty men, disguised as Indians, went on board the vessels, threw the tea into the water, and then quietly dispersed.

8. At the news of these proceedings Parliament ordered the port of Boston to be closed against all ships, and the capital to be transferred to Salem; nearly all the important privi-

leges granted to the people by the Charter of Massachusetts were taken away; troops were quartered on the colonies at the people's expense; it was enacted that officers prosecuted for deeds done in the enforcement of these laws should not be tried except in England; and General Gage, besides having command of the troops, was appointed governor of the colony. About this time the patriot party became known as the Whigs and the British party as the Tories.

9. The Quebec Statute.—These grossly tyrannical measures aroused everywhere in America the deepest indignation. Another act, however, passed about the same time, was eminently just, although the colonists bitterly resented it. To deter Canada from joining the rebels Parliament passed what is known as the Quebec Statute, restoring the French civil law, called the "custom of Paris," and sanctioning in Canada and all the western country recently acquired from France "the free exercise of the religion of the Church of Rome," with the accustomed dues and rights of the clergy. This had been virtually promised in the terms of surrender, but Puritan bigotry was still so strong in the colonies that they made the concession of liberty of conscience one of their grounds of complaint against the ministry—an error of which they soon saw cause to repent.

10. The Old Continental Congress.—The patriots had for some time concerted common measures of defence by means of "committees of correspondence," when in 1774 several of the assemblies proposed a general congress of delegates. This body, which met in Philadelphia September 5, with representatives from all the colonies except Georgia, was the first, or, as it is often called, the "old" Continental Congress. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, presided.

11. Among the most distinguished of the members were Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia; Samuel Adams and his second cousin John Adams, of Massachusetts; John Jay, Philip Livingston, and James Duane, of New York; Roger Sherman, of Connecticut; Edward

Rutledge, John Rutledge, and Christopher Gadsden, of South Carolina. Patrick Henry, J. Rutledge, and Lee were the most



SAMUEL ADAMS.

eloquent orators; "but if you speak of solid information and sound judgment," said Patrick Henry, "Washington was unquestionably the greatest man of them all."

12. The Congress drew up a Declaration of Colonial Rights, a protest against various arbitrary acts of Parliament, a petition to the king, and addresses to the people of Great Britain, Canada, and the colonies. The pledge against trade with the mo-

ther-country was renewed, and provision was made for another Congress to meet in May, unless the grievances should meanwhile be redressed. Pitt (who was now Lord Chatham) warmly praised the wisdom of the Congress, and pointed to it as a proof "that all attempts to impose servitude upon such a mighty continental nation must be vain." Other enlightened English statesmen urged the government to give way, but the obstinacy of the king and Lord North was unconquerable; and so the Revolution began.

QUESTIONS.

1. What new scheme of taxation did the ministry adopt? How did the Americans meet it? 2. What increased the popular exasperation? 3. What followed the arrival of the Commissioners of Customs? How did the ministry treat Boston? 4. Give an account of the Boston Massacre. 5. How were the offenders dealt with? 6. What plan did Lord North adopt? What was his mistake? 7. How was the tea tax received? Describe the destruction of tea in Boston harbor. 8. What measures of punishment did Parliament enact? 9. What was the Quebec Statute? 10. What important body met in Philadelphia? When? 11. Name some of the principal members. 12. What business did the Congress transact? What did Lord Chatham say of it?

CHAPTER XXI.

THE WAR BEGINS—LEXINGTON—CONCORD—TICONDEROGA—BUNKER HILL.

1. The People take Arms.—In the meantime the people of Massachusetts began to collect arms and enroll themselves in companies, prepared to turn out at a minute's notice, from which circumstance they were called "minute men." Public writers and speakers boldly defended the right of rebellion. Royal officers were forced to resign. In defiance of General Gage a Provincial Congress of Massachusetts assembled under the presidency of John Hancock, first at Cambridge and afterwards at Concord, and took measures to call out troops and gather military supplies. General Gage in alarm sent home for more soldiers, and began to throw up fortifications and seize all the arms and ammunition he could find.

2. Learning that guns and powder had been stored at Concord, sixteen miles from Boston, Gage ordered eight hundred picked soldiers to march thither by night and destroy them. The movements of the British were closely watched. They had no sooner started than signals were given to all the surrounding country, and a young patriot named Paul Revere, eluding the guards, leaped upon his horse and roused the minute-men along the road. "Paul Revere's ride" was instantly followed by the ringing of bells and the mustering of armed men; and when the British reached Lexington, half-way between Boston and Concord, at dawn on the 19th of April, 1775, sixty or seventy of the patriots were drawn up to oppose them.

3. Battle of Lexington.—Major Pitcairn, who commanded the British advance, cried out, "Disperse, ye villains, ye rebels, disperse! Why don't you lay down your arms

and disperse?" As they stood motionless, he gave the order to fire. It was a slaughter rather than a battle. Eight of the patriots were killed and several wounded, and the British then proceeded to Concord to complete their work.

4. Battle of Concord.—Here they destroyed an insignificant quantity of stores. At a bridge near the village they encountered 400 Americans, hastily collected from the neighboring towns, and were so warmly received that they began a hasty retreat. The patriots followed them. The whole country was in arms. A galling fire was poured upon the regulars from behind every fence and almost every tree. The retreat became a rout; and when the British were rescued at last by the arrival of Lord Percy with reinforcements, they had lost 273 men. They encamped for the night on Bunker Hill under cover of the ships of war in the river.

5. Up to this time no party in America had thought of a separation from the mother-country, but now the colonies were aflame with the spirit of independence. The Provincial Congress of Massachusetts came together under the presidency of Dr. Joseph Warren, voted to raise 13,000 men, and invited the other New England colonies to make up the army to 30,000.

6. Before the end of the month the Americans had 20,000 men in camp around Boston, and in the course of a few weeks the authority of the royal governors in all the colonies was at an end. In some places the management of affairs was taken by the provincial Assemblies, in others by provincial Congresses or Committees of Safety. Franklin was chairman of the Committee of Safety in Pennsylvania. In North Carolina the people of Mecklenburg County went so far as to assemble in convention at Charlotte (May 31) and adopt a formal declaration of independence. This movement, however, was not generally sustained.

7. Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.—The fort-

resses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point were considered important by the colonists, not only on account of their position on the frontier of Canada but because they contained a great quantity of stores. An expedition of Vermont volunteers, known as Green Mountain Boys, marched against them under command of Ethan Allen and Seth Warner. Allen surprised Ticonderoga at night (May 10, 1775), penetrating into the fort undiscovered with about eighty men, and rousing the British commander from bed with a summons to surrender. "In whose name?" asked the astonished officer. "In the name of Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was the reply. Warner captured Crown Point with equal ease, and by these two exploits the patriots obtained over two hundred cannon and a large supply of powder, of which they had great need.

8. The Second Congress.—The second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, May 10, the day of the capture of Ticonderoga. Peyton Randolph was at first president, but John Hancock soon succeeded him in that position. Washington, Jefferson, Franklin, the Adamses, Patrick Henry, and R. H. Lee were members. The Congress was moderate and asked only for redress of grievances, not independence; but it took vigorous measures to carry on war; it formed a federal union, assumed the general authority of government, and authorized the issue of bills of credit.

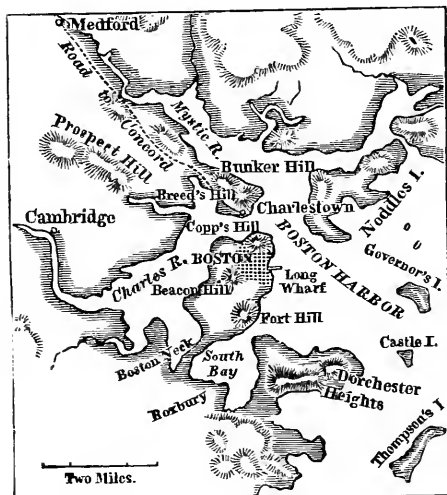
9. Battle of Bunker Hill.—The British army in Boston soon received large reinforcements led by Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Henry Clinton, raising their total force to ten thousand disciplined regulars, besides a considerable fleet. The Americans comprised a number of independent commands under Generals Artemas Ward of Massachusetts, Israel Putnam of Connecticut, Nathanael Greene of Rhode Island, and others; General Ward being recognized as chief. The whole number of men was about sixteen thousand.

10. The Committee of Safety having resolved to make

the blockade of Boston more complete by occupying the heights of Charlestown overlooking the city and harbor, Colonel Prescott, of Massachusetts, with twelve hundred men, was ordered (June 16) to march secretly from Cambridge and throw up entrenchments during the night on Bunker Hill. He understood his instructions to refer to Breed's Hill, an eminence a little nearer Boston, and there, accordingly, he began to fortify.

11. The patriots worked all night with such silence that their operations were not discovered, and by daylight on the 17th they had thrown up a redoubt and a breastwork. The

digging went on some hours longer under a fire from the fleet, while the British in Boston prepared for an assault. At last the tired Americans laid down their shovels and took their muskets.



BOSTON AND VICINITY.

12. Prescott was everywhere, encouraging his men. With him were Dr. Joseph Warren, one of the ablest of the patriot leaders, who held a commission as major-general, but refused to deprive Prescott of the com-

mand, and served with a musket as a volunteer; and Israel Putnam, a veteran of the French and Indian wars, now fifty-seven years old, who had left his plough standing in the furrow at the news of the fight at Lexington, and in one day had galloped sixty-eight miles to join the patriots at Boston.

13. About three o'clock in the afternoon the assaulting party, three thousand picked regulars commanded by Generals Howe and Pigot, having crossed the Charles River from Boston in boats, advanced up the hill under cover of a fire

from the ships and batteries. The provincials stood firm. "Don't one of you fire," said Putnam, "till you see the whites of their eyes."

14. Twice the veteran regiments of King George advanced close to the American lines, only to be driven back in disorder by the steady and well-aimed fire of the brave provincials. The British General Clinton, who was watching the engagement from Boston, threw himself into a boat, crossed over, succeeded in reforming the defeated red-coats on the beach, and, reinforced by marines from the fleet, led them to a third assault. As before, the quick but deliberate fire of the Americans, delivered at short range, checked the advance; but at this critical moment the ammunition of the colonists gave out. After a short and desperate struggle at the bayonet's point, Prescott was obliged to abandon the hill he had so gallantly defended, and the provincials made good their retreat over Charlestown Neck.

15. At the beginning of the retreat the ardent Warren was killed. The Americans lost 449 in killed, wounded, and prisoners, while the British loss was over 1,000, or more than a third of the force engaged. The battle proved the ability of the raw militia to contend against disciplined regulars; and the dear-bought victory, only won by the exhaustion of the Americans' powder, was so little satisfactory to the British government that General Gage was displaced from the command and succeeded by General Howe. This engagement, always known as the Battle of Bunker Hill, was fought June 17, 1775.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who were the minute-men? What was done by the Massachusetts Assembly? What did General Gage do?
2. What was his object in sending troops to Concord? Give an account of Paul Revere's ride.
3. Describe the battle of Lexington.
4. The battle of Concord. The retreat.

5. What effect had these occurrences on the popular spirit? What action was taken in Massachusetts?
 6. What change took place throughout the colonies? Give an account of the Mecklenburg Declaration.
 7. Describe the capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.
 8. What was done by the second Continental Congress?
 9. What was the strength of the two armies at Boston?
 10. What orders were given to Colonel Prescott? Where did he entrench?
 12. Who were the American leaders?
 13. Describe the first attack.
 14. Give an account of the battle.
 15. What American leader was killed? What were the losses on each side? How was the result of the engagement regarded? By what name has the battle always been known? On what day was it fought?
-

CHAPTER XXII.

WASHINGTON COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF—OPERATIONS IN CANADA—SIEGE OF BOSTON.

1. The Continental Army.—The Congress at Philadelphia had adopted the unorganized force before Boston as a “Continental Army,” and appointed George Washington commander-in-chief of all the troops to be raised for the defence of the colonies, voting him pay at the rate of \$500 a month. He accepted the appointment but refused the pay, declaring that he would take nothing but his actual expenses. Setting out immediately on horseback, he reached the camp at Cambridge on the 2d of July, 1775.

2. Attack upon Canada.—A second army was raised for an attack upon Canada, and Washington gave the command of it to General Philip Schuyler; but, Schuyler falling sick on the way, the management of the expedition fell to General Richard Montgomery, an experienced and distinguished Irish soldier, who had lately settled in New York.

3. Montgomery captured St. John's and Chambly, both on the Sorel (the outlet of Lake Champlain), and then easily made himself master of Montreal, after Ethan Allen had been taken prisoner in a foolhardy attempt to surprise that town, and had been sent to England in irons. Montgomery then moved to the attack of Quebec, in conjunction with Benedict Arnold, who, with great loss and hardship, had brought an expedition through the Maine wilderness from Boston.

4. The united army, not exceeding 1,100 men, assaulted Quebec on the 31st of December, in a blinding snow-storm. The brave Montgomery was killed almost at the first charge, Arnold was badly wounded, and the Americans were driven off with a loss of 300 men. They persevered all the winter and spring in blockading Quebec, but the arrival of reinforcements for the British at last compelled them to retire.



GENERAL RICHARD MONTGOMERY.

5. **Other Operations.**—The British fleets in the meantime made harassing attacks upon various parts of the coasts. Lord Dunmore, the royal governor of Virginia, having been driven out of the colony, collected some ships and burned Norfolk (January, 1776). An attack upon Charleston, S. C., by a British fleet under Sir Peter Parker and a large land force under General Clinton, was beaten off with great loss by a small body of men commanded by Colonel Moultrie. The colonists were greatly encouraged by this exploit; moreover, they soon fitted out cruisers of their own, and by cap-

turing British supply-ships they obtained stores of which they were in great want.

6. Commissioners to Canada.—Although the population of Canada was still chiefly French and Catholic, and it was only two years since the colonies had indignantly protested against allowing them the freedom of their religion (see page 113), it was hoped that they might be persuaded to join in the revolt against the British crown, and in the spring of 1776 delegates were accordingly sent to Montreal. The persons chosen for this mission were Benjamin Franklin; Charles Carroll of Carrollton, the distinguished Catholic patriot who



ARCHBISHOP CARROLL.

signed the Declaration of Independence as representative of Maryland; Samuel Chase, likewise of Maryland; and Father John Carroll, a cousin of Charles.

7. Father Carroll.—

John Carroll was born at Upper Marlborough, Maryland, in 1735, studied with the Jesuits, first in Maryland and afterwards in France, became a member of the Society, and spent several years in priestly duties in Europe.

After the suppression of the Society of Jesus he retired first to England, and in 1774 returned to America to devote himself to the mission in Maryland. Here his sympathies were engaged from the first with the popular side. The Catholics of Maryland were amongst the staunchest supporters of colonial liberty, and they were represented in the Continental Congress by two of their most eminent

men—Daniel Carroll, the elder brother of Father John, and Charles Carroll, his cousin.*

8. Franklin endeavored to convince the Canadians of the political advantages of a connection with the thirteen colonies, and Father Carroll used his influence with the clergy; but the British government had caused the protests of the colonists against the freedom of the Catholic religion to be translated into French and circulated amongst the Canadians. This, with other causes, defeated the efforts of the commissioners, and after a fortnight they returned to New York.

9. **Evacuation of Boston.**—If the British had been enterprising enough to attack Washington during the winter he could hardly have maintained himself at Cambridge; but their inaction enabled him, with the assistance of Greene, Putnam, Gates, and other subordinates, to bring discipline and order into his destitute and refractory camp, to fill up the ranks, and to replenish the stock of powder. When spring opened he was prepared to take the offensive.

10. Occupying Dorchester Heights by night, he surprised the British with a series of redoubts which commanded the town and fleet. Not daring to assault these works, Howe had no alternative but to evacuate Boston, and on the 17th of March he sailed with his whole army for Halifax. This important victory for the patriots was received with great rejoicings throughout the country, and Congress ordered a gold medal to be struck in Washington's honor.

11. Putting Boston in a state of defence, Washington now hastened to New York, where he was certain that the next blow would be struck. The fortifications already begun un-

* In 1789 the episcopal see of Baltimore was erected, and Father Carroll became the first bishop in the United States. His appointment had been recommended to the Holy See by Franklin, who retained a strong regard for him. In 1808 Bishop Carroll was promoted to the dignity of archbishop, New York, Philadelphia, Boston, and Bardstowm being established as suffragan sees. He died in 1815.

der his orders were hastily completed, Greene was stationed with a division of troops on Long Island, and measures were taken to disarm the Tory inhabitants.

QUESTIONS.

1. What military arrangements were made by the Congress?
2. Who commanded the army despatched against Canada?
3. What were Montgomery's first operations?
4. Give an account of the attack on Quebec.
5. What was done by the British fleets? What occurred at Charleston?
6. What was the object of sending a commission to Canada? Who were the commissioners?
7. Give an account of Father Carroll. What is said of the Catholics of Maryland?
8. What was the result of the mission to Canada?
9. How was Washington employed at Boston?
10. To what dilemma did he reduce General Howe? What was Howe's course?
11. What did Washington do?

CHAPTER XXIII.

THE MOVEMENT FOR INDEPENDENCE—PROCEEDINGS IN THE CONGRESS—THE DECLARATION ADOPTED.

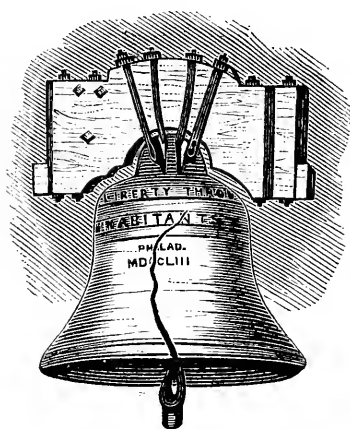
1. The Project of Separation.—Even after the war had fairly begun the colonies still looked forward to a reconciliation with the mother-country, and the first proposals for a separation were received with much disapproval. The conflict of arms, however, soon gave an impulse to a bolder policy. General instructions extending to the question of independence, without using the word, were given by Massachusetts to her delegates in Congress in January, 1776, and this example was presently followed by others. On the 10th of May John Adams carried through Congress a resolution requesting each of the United Colonies to establish a government for itself. Five days later the Virginia delegates were instructed by their Convention to introduce a declaration of independence.

2. In obedience to this instruction Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, on the 7th of June moved in the Congress at Philadelphia "that the United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent States, and that their political connection with Great Britain is, and ought to be, dissolved." This resolution was debated in secret. The majority favored it, but the question was postponed to give time for consultation with the people. In the meanwhile a committee, consisting of Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, John Adams of Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston of New York, was appointed to prepare a formal declaration of independence.

3. When Lee's postponed "resolution respecting independence" was taken up on the 1st of July, the spirit of the patriots had everywhere declared itself. The military expedition was very discouraging. Washington was menaced by

an overwhelming British force at New York, and the formidable expedition of Parker and Clinton was threatening Charleston. Congress was heartened, however, by the news that the Convention of Maryland, under the persuasions of Carroll and Chase, had just voted unanimously for independence. After Adams had made a powerful address in support of the Virginia resolution, a vote was taken in committee of the whole. Nine of the thirteen colonies sustained the resolution; South Carolina was unanimously opposed to it; Delaware and Pennsylvania were divided; New York had called a popular convention to consider the question, and, as it had not yet met, the delegates in Congress had no authority to vote.

4. The Declaration of Independence.—The matter having



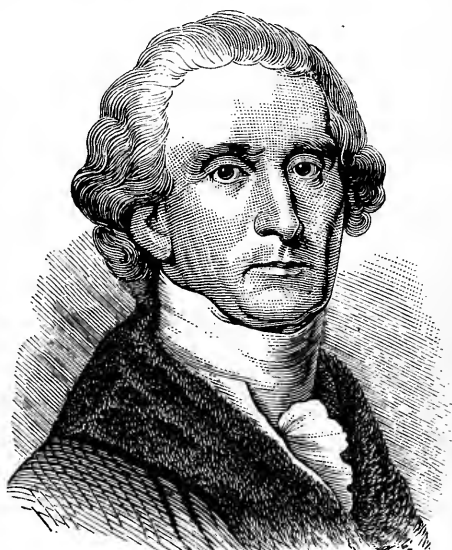
thus been decided in committee, the final vote was taken by the House on the 2d of July, when twelve colonies resolved "that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved." There was no opposition. New York was

still unable to vote, but the delegates of that province were in favor of the resolution; and when the new convention met a week later at White Plains, the Declaration was ratified unanimously.

5. The discussions in the Congress at Philadelphia were held in private. A large crowd waited in the streets to learn the results of the momentous deliberation. In the steeple of the State House was a bell, imported from London twenty-three years previously, and by a strange coincidence it bore

the following text inscribed on the metal : "Proclaim liberty throughout the land unto all the inhabitants thereof." The old bell-ringer stood at his post all day, ready to announce the Declaration by a joyous peal, and his boy was stationed below to give him the signal as soon as the resolution was adopted. As the time went on the story is that the old man shook his head and repeated : "They will never do it ! they will never do it !" At last the boy appeared, clapping his hands and shouting, "Ring ! ring !" Then the bell "proclaimed liberty," and the whole city was filled with rejoicing. The Liberty Bell is still preserved at Independence Hall in the old State House of Philadelphia, the same room in which the Declaration was adopted.

6. It now remained for the delegates to set forth the reasons of the separation in the formal Declaration of Independence. This famous document, written by Jefferson, had been submitted to Congress on the 28th of June, and, after a few changes, was agreed to on the evening of the 4th of July, twelve of the colonies—or, as they should now be called, independent States—approving it, and New York not voting. It was then signed by John Hancock, President of the Continental Congress, and immediately published. The other delegates waited until it had been carefully engrossed on parchment, and did not sign until August 2.



CHARLES CARROLL OF CARROLLTON.

7. When John Hancock wrote his name, in a large, bold, and beautiful hand, he said : "There, John Bull can read that without spectacles," Franklin remarked : "Well, gen-

lemen, we must hang together now, or we are likely to hang separately." As Charles Carroll affixed his signature, one of the members, knowing that he was very rich, said : " There go a few millions. However, there are many Carrolls, and the British will not know which one it is." Mr. Carroll thereupon, in order that there might be no mistake, added to his name " of Carrollton," and he was ever afterward known by that title.*

8. The Declaration was celebrated by the people with demonstrations of joy. Washington caused it to be read to his soldiers in New York on the 9th of July. On the same evening the excited inhabitants pulled down a leaden statue of George III. on horseback which stood on the Bowling Green, and it was melted into bullets for the use of the patriot army.

QUESTIONS.

1. How were the proposals of separation from England at first received in the colonies? What was the effect of the conflict of arms? How did Massachusetts instruct her delegates in the Congress? Virginia? What resolution was adopted at the instance of John Adams?

2. Who moved the Virginia resolution? When? What was it? What was the result of the debate? What committee was appointed? Who were the members?

3. What was the military situation when Lee's resolution came up? What encouraged Congress? What was the vote in Committee of the Whole?

4. When was the final vote taken? Repeat the resolution.

5. Give the story of the Liberty Bell.

6. Who wrote the formal Declaration of Independence? When was this document agreed to?

7. What did John Hancock say when he wrote his name? Franklin? Why did Charles Carroll add " of Carrollton " ?

8. How was the Declaration celebrated?

* This illustrious Catholic patriot survived all the other signers of the Declaration of Independence, and died in 1832, universally respected. In his last days he uttered these words: " I have lived to my ninety-sixth year; I have enjoyed continued health; I have been blessed with great wealth, prosperity, and most of the good things which the world can bestow—public approbation, esteem, applause; but what I now look back on with greatest satisfaction to myself is that I have practised the duties of my religion."

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE BRITISH AT NEW YORK—BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND—CARLETON ON LAKE CHAMPLAIN—BATTLE OF WHITE PLAINS.

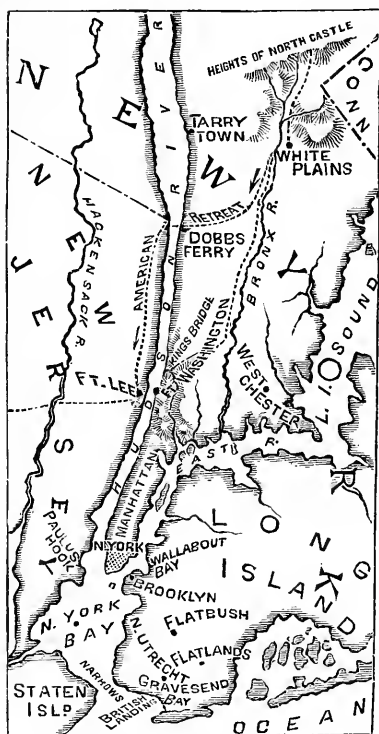
1. The British attack New York.—The British government had not been idle during these proceedings. They sent out a strong fleet under Admiral Lord Howe, and furnished heavy reinforcements of soldiers to their military commander-in-chief, General Sir William Howe, the admiral's brother. About 17,000 of these troops were hired from the small princes of Germany. As most of them were obtained from the Prince of Hesse Cassel, they were all called by the general name of Hessians. They were especially hateful to the Americans.

2. The first operations were intended to secure the line of the Hudson River, so as to cut off New England from the other colonies. The Howes were to attack New York, while Sir Guy Carleton led an expedition from Canada to Lake Champlain. General Howe, with the troops lately driven out of Boston, landed on Staten Island, in New York Bay, on the 2d of July, and his brother arrived with the fleet and other forces ten days later.

3. Battle of Long Island.—The British crossed from Staten Island to Gravesend Bay on Long Island, with the intention of seizing Brooklyn Heights, from which commanding position the city of New York would be at their mercy. General Greene, to whom Washington had entrusted the defence of this ground, had fortified the approaches in anticipation of such a movement ; but he was attacked by a raging fever, and neither Sullivan nor Putnam, who successively took his place, was equally familiar with the locality.

4. Partly in consequence of this misfortune, the British succeeded, in the battle of August 27, in gaining a pass be-

yond the hills at the American left, taking their lines in rear, and capturing Sullivan with a large number of prisoners. This decided the day in their favor, although the fighting continued desperately till dark. The Americans lost five hundred in killed and wounded, besides eleven hundred prisoners,



WASHINGTON'S RETREAT.

who were soon suffering great hardships and cruelties in the prisons of New York and the prison ships moored in the harbor.*

5. Howe now waited for his fleet to come up in order to complete the capture of Brooklyn and of the army defending it. But before light on the morning of the 29th, aided by a thick fog, Washington caused the whole American force to be ferried across the East River to New York. Thence, as New York could be shelled from Brooklyn Heights, and attacked on both sides by the British fleet; he withdrew to Harlem Heights at the north end of Manhattan Island. New York remained in the hands

of the British till the close of the war.

6. **Carleton's Expedition.**—Howe was still far from his object, of controlling the line of the Hudson—a plan, indeed, which the British were never able to carry out. Carleton was to ascend Lake Champlain and Lake George in boats (there were no roads in that region), and thence march to Albany to co-operate with an advance from New York. The Americans, under Benedict Arnold, collected a small flotilla to op-

* During the Revolutionary war about 11,000 prisoners died in these ships, which lay near the present site of the Brooklyn Navy-Yard.

pose him, and a battle was fought on Lake Champlain, October 11, 1776. Outnumbered two to one, the patriots lost more than half their vessels and barely escaped with the rest to Ticonderoga; but they displayed so much courage and ability that Carleton did not venture to attack them there, and the enterprise was given up for the season.

7. Nathan Hale.—As it was very important for the Americans to obtain correct information of the force and position of the British troops on Long Island, a young captain in a Connecticut regiment, named Nathan Hale, volunteered on that dangerous service. He entered the camp at Brooklyn, learned all the necessary facts, and was about to return when he was arrested and hanged the next morning as a spy.

8. Washington and Howe.—After a delay of a month, employed by Washington in reorganizing and drilling his poor little army on Harlem Heights, Howe attempted to get in the American rear. Washington foiled him by falling back to Fordham Heights and entrenching himself there, and for two weeks a series of manœuvres and skirmishes went on, in which the superior skill of the American commander baffled all the efforts of Howe's numerous and well-drilled regiments.

9. Battle of White Plains.—On the 28th of October a battle took place at White Plains. After severe fighting the British carried one of the American positions. They then rested for the night. During the darkness Washington built three redoubts of corn-stalks, piled with the roots outward; the lumps of earth clinging to them, just as they had been pulled from the ground, made them look like solid fortifications. Deceived by the apparent strength of these works, Howe was afraid to attack them in the morning, and while he was waiting for reinforcements Washington fortified a much stronger position on the heights of Northcastle, five miles distant, and fell back with all his baggage, stores, and guns. Then he made haste to fortify the passes of the Highlands, from West Point to Peckskill, where the Hudson flows through

the gateway of the mountains, and, sending part of his army into New Jersey by these defiles, he held the whole force ready to move at a moment's notice. Howe waited a few days and then retired towards New York.

10. The whole of this campaign showed the military genius of Washington in a strong light. Unable to resist Howe's superior numbers, he had nevertheless always saved his army and stores by adroit retreats; and, keeping the passes of the Hudson and the communications with New England, he had defeated the principal object of the British advance. More than this, he had succeeded in holding together and reducing to something like discipline a miserable, ragged, hungry, dissatisfied, half-armed and half-hearted body of men, who hardly deserved to be called an army.

QUESTIONS.

1. What preparations were made by the British to subdue the rebellion? Who were the Hessian troops?
2. What was the first British plan of campaign?
- 3, 4. Give an account of the battle of Long Island. What was the result?
5. What was Washington's course?
6. What was the plan of Carleton? Who opposed him on Lake Champlain? With what result?
7. Give an account of Nathan Hale.
8. Describe the movements of Howe and Washington.
9. Describe the battle of White Plains. What was Washington's next movement? What did Howe do?
10. What is said of Washington's conduct in this campaign?

CHAPTER XXV.

WASHINGTON AND CORNWALLIS IN THE JERSEYS—BATTLE OF TRENTON —BATTLE OF PRINCETON.

1. Campaign in the Jerseys.—Howe's next attempt was upon Philadelphia. First capturing Fort Washington, on the upper end of Manhattan Island, he sent Lord Cornwallis across the Hudson with a strong corps. Washington, who divined his intention, instantly moved in the same direction, manœuvring to cover Philadelphia, and the two armies crossed the Jerseys in hot haste, often in sight of each other.

2. The patriots were in great alarm during these movements. The Convention of New York travelled from place to place on horseback, and sometimes, it is said, held meetings in the saddle. Congress removed from Philadelphia to Baltimore. The army became demoralized; and it has lately been discovered that Charles Lee, one of Washington's principal generals, who was made prisoner at this time, engaged in treasonable correspondence with the enemy.

3. Battle of Trenton.—Early in December Washington had fallen back into Pennsylvania, crossing the Delaware at Trenton, and securing all the boats. Cornwallis halted on the Jersey side of the river and went into winter quarters. Strengthened by the arrival of another division of troops, the American commander now determined to strike a sudden blow that might at least revive the courage of the people; courage was especially needed just then, because the term of enlistment of many of his troops was about to expire. He resolved to fall upon a detachment of one thousand five hundred Hessians at Trenton, and he chose Christmas night for the attack.

4. With two thousand four hundred men Washington crossed the Delaware in boats nine miles above Trenton,

The river was full of floating ice, snow was falling, and the passage, made with great difficulty, took all night. The troops marched in two columns, led by Greene and Sullivan, and reached Trenton about eight o'clock on the morning of December 26, 1776. The Hessians were completely surprised and routed. Their commander, Colonel Rahl, was killed; and Washington returned to camp with one thousand prisoners. Afterwards he recrossed the river and occupied Trenton.

5. Battle of Princeton.—The British fell back from the river and concentrated at Princeton, and Lord Cornwallis, who had returned to New York on his way home to England, was hastily sent to take the command again while General Howe was bringing up reinforcements. On the 2d of January, 1777, Cornwallis marched to Trenton, and, resting for the night in sight of the American lines, made preparations to attack the next morning. His army was much the larger of the two; a strong force at Princeton was ready to join him; and the position of Washington was full of danger.

6. But while Cornwallis slept Washington quietly abandoned his camp, marched around his enemy, and at sunrise (January 3) fell upon the British reserves at Princeton just as they were starting to take part in the expected battle at Trenton. Some of the American militia, disheartened by the fall of their leader, the gallant General Mercer, were put to flight early in the action; but Washington, mounted on a white horse, dashed into the thickest of the fight and turned the fortune of the day. Those of the British who escaped from the field hastened towards Trenton to join Cornwallis.

7. When Cornwallis approached with the main body the Americans were obliged to retire towards Morristown. But Washington's brilliant campaign had overturned all his adversary's plans. Philadelphia was saved; Congress returned to its place; and in the course of the winter the British were driven out of every post they held in New Jersey except New Brunswick and Perth Amboy.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was Howe's next attempt? How did Washington meet it?
2. What was the effect of these movements on the people?
3. What was the situation of the two armies at Trenton? What resolve did Washington take? What date was fixed for the enterprise?
4. Give an account of the battle of Trenton.
5. What did Cornwallis undertake in January?
6. How did Washington outwit him? Give an account of the battle of Princeton?
7. What was the result of Washington's campaign in the Jerseys?

CHAPTER XXVI.

ASSISTANCE FROM FRANCE—THE NAVY—FOREIGN OFFICERS—BATTLE OF THE BRANDYWINE—OCCUPATION OF PHILADELPHIA—BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN.

1. The Aid of France.—The patriots had hitherto depended for money principally upon a paper currency, which declined rapidly in value as the issues increased, and the cause of independence would have been desperate but for aid opportunely furnished by the French king, Louis XVI. Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee were appointed diplomatic commissioners to the court of France. They were not officially recognized, for the French government, although anxious to injure England, was not yet ready for an open war, which would have been the consequence of treating the colonies as an independent nation; but they were kindly received, and the court ena-



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

bled them by indirect means to obtain military supplies from the royal arsenals, besides considerable sums of money.

2. Congress had ordered the construction of a navy, and the American agents were allowed to build, buy, and equip vessels in French ports. Government cruisers as well as privateers were fitted out in this way in France to pursue British merchantmen; and by various subterfuges they were allowed to dispose of their prizes in French ports. John Paul Jones, Samuel Nicholson, Lambert Wickes, and Gustavus Conyng-ham were among the regular naval officers who distinguished themselves in cruises directed by the commissioners at Paris.

3. **Foreign Officers.**—Commissions were offered to French and other foreign officers who wished to serve in the American armies, and a large number of ambitious soldiers consequently embarked. Washington was embarrassed by the

arrival of so many, not all of them men of merit, and the American officers were displeased to find strangers suddenly placed over them.

4. Among the foreigners, however, who thus gave their services to the American cause were several distinguished men: Kosciuszko and Pulaski, the famous Polish patriots; Baron Steuben, an accomplished and experienced Prussian soldier; Baron de Kalb, an Alsatian in the French service; and the French Mar-



LAFAYETTE.

quis de Lafayette, who, at the age of nineteen, purchased a ship with his own means, and, in spite of the prohibition of his government, sailed for America to offer his sword, without pay, to the cause of independence. These generals

rendered the most valuable aid to the struggling nation, and their names are spoken with gratitude by all Americans.

5. Campaign of 1777.—The campaign of 1777 opened with detached expeditions, by each side in turn, against towns in Connecticut and on Long Island Sound—each in turn winning some success. It was not until the end of June that Howe developed his purpose, which was to renew the attack upon Philadelphia.

6. The British proceeded by water to a point near the head of Chesapeake Bay, sixty miles south of Philadelphia, where they landed 18,000 men. Washington, by forced marches, had already reached the capital with 11,000 men, and marched out to oppose the invader. The two armies met at Brandywine Creek, about half-way between the landing-place and the city (September 11).

7. Battle of the Brandywine.—Howe ordered the Hessians, under Knyphausen, to attack the American front at Chadd's Ford, while Cornwallis crossed the stream further up and attempted to gain the American rear. The attack at the ford was gallantly resisted by General Wayne, and Sullivan, who commanded on the American right, marched with three divisions to intercept Cornwallis. He was beaten, however, and driven back in confusion, and Wayne was then compelled to abandon the ford, Greene bringing up the reserve to cover the retreat. The Americans retired first to Chester and then through Philadelphia to Germantown, having lost about twelve hundred men, or twice as many as the British. For his bravery in this battle Count Pulaski was made a brigadier-general. Lafayette, who was wounded, distinguished himself so highly that he was soon after appointed to the command of a division.

8. After some days, occupied in skirmishes and manœuvres, Washington was obliged to fall back behind the Schuylkill, about thirty miles from Philadelphia, and General Howe took possession of the city on the 26th of September, Congress having in the meantime removed first to Lancaster

and afterward to York. The main body of the British was stationed at Germantown, then a small village about six miles from Philadelphia, but now included within the limits of the city.

9. Battle of Germantown.—Here General Howe was suddenly attacked by Washington at sunrise on the 4th of October, and his men were driven in disorder. Just when victory seemed secure, however, the American line, having to advance in a dense fog across ground which was broken by a great many strong stone enclosures, became confused in the darkness; the officers could not see their own position or that of the enemy; and the British took advantage of the accident to rally and repel the attack. The Americans lost one thousand men in this affair, and their adversary lost about six hundred.

10. Forts Mifflin and Mercer, on the Delaware River below Philadelphia, were captured by the British after a severe engagement, and Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill, about twenty miles above Philadelphia.

QUESTIONS.

1. From what source had the patriots hitherto got money? What valuable aid did they receive when their financial affairs were becoming desperate? Who were the American commissioners in France? How were they treated? What privileges did they obtain?

2. What was done for the establishment of a navy? How did the American cruisers dispose of their prizes? Name some of the American naval commanders.

3, 4. What is said of foreign officers in the American service? Mention some of the most distinguished.

5. What was Howe's principal design in the campaign of 1777?

6, 7. Give an account of the battle of the Brandywine.

8. What was the result of this engagement?

9. Describe the battle of Germantown. Where did Washington encamp for the winter?

CHAPTER XXVII.

BURGOYNE'S INVASION—BATTLE OF BENNINGTON—SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE.

1. **Burgoyne's Invasion.**—While the Americans were thus unfortunate in the middle department, a brilliant success in the north revived their drooping spirits and had a very important effect upon the fortunes of the war. The British still adhered to the project of an invasion from Canada to seize the whole line of the Hudson River, and a powerful expedition was fitted out for that purpose and placed under the command of General Burgoyne.

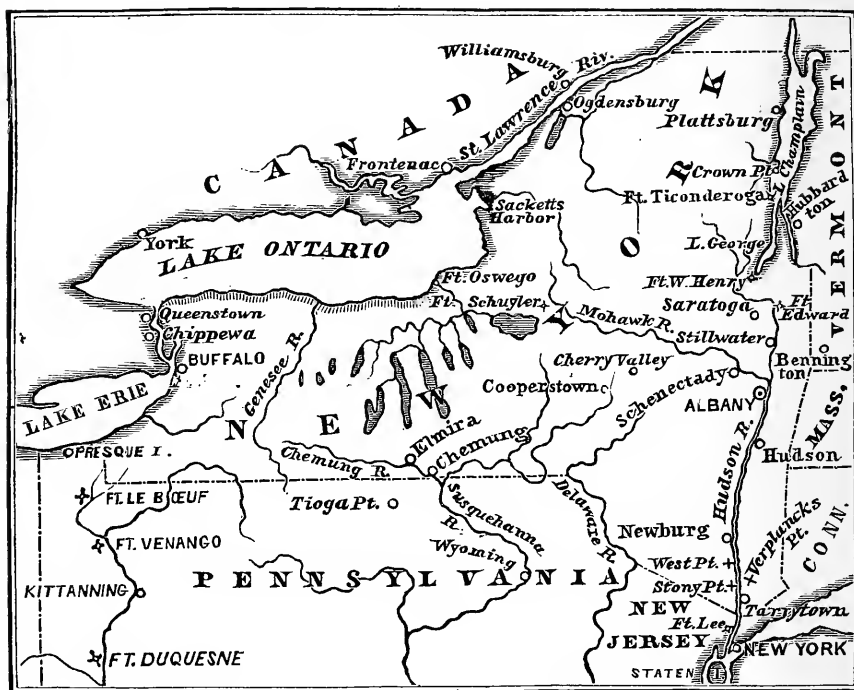
2. The plan of campaign was arranged by Burgoyne himself after a personal interview with the king. He had nearly eight thousand men, of whom four hundred were Indians, two hundred and fifty Canadians and Tories, and the rest disciplined English and German regulars. There were forty-two pieces of artillery.

3. Burgoyne was an able and distinguished man, and his army was one of the best the king had yet sent against the American rebels. The Americans, on the other hand, had only a very small and ill-furnished force in Northern New York. In the course of a month (June–July) Burgoyne drove General St. Clair out of Fort Ticonderoga, and worsted him at Skenesborough (now Whitehall) and at Hubbardton, and the chase was not arrested until the Americans reached Fort Edward, on the Hudson.

4. There Schuyler, who commanded the department, succeeded in mustering about forty-five hundred destitute men. The British were only twenty-six miles distant, but Schuyler obstructed the road so thoroughly by felling trees and burning bridges that Burgoyne was twenty-four days in reaching the river. In the meantime the Americans had fallen back

first to Saratoga, and then to Stillwater, near the mouth of the Mohawk.

5. St. Leger's Expedition.—It was part of Burgoyne's plan that a force of whites and Indians under Colonel St. Leger should march from Canada into the western part of New York, and thence proceed down the valley of the Mohawk to unite with him at Albany. St. Leger accordingly moved against Fort Schuyler (now Rome). The American militia under General Herkimer hastened to the



MAP OF NEW YORK.

relief of the fort, but fell into an ambush at Oriskany, and many of them were killed, including their brave commander (August 6).

6. Herkimer's sacrifice, however, saved the fort. The garrison made a sally, and Arnold, with three regiments from Schuyler's army, presently came to the rescue. St. Leger

abandoned most of his stores and baggage and fled to Canada, leaving Burgoyne crippled by his failure.

7. Battle of Bennington.—Still more unfortunate were Burgoyne's undertakings on his left flank. He had sent a mixed force under Colonel Baum to seize a quantity of stores collected by the Americans at Bennington, Vermont. Six miles from the town Baum was confronted by a body of New Hampshire militia commanded by Colonel Stark. Both parties threw up entrenchments and sent back for reinforcements. On August 16 Stark made an attack in four columns, and after an engagement of two hours put the British force to rout.

8. On the same day Colonel Breyman arrived with a fresh body of British, but fortunately Colonel Seth Warner came up also with help for Stark. The battle was renewed and lasted till night, when Breyman retreated in confusion, leaving his guns and baggage. The British lost in the two actions about two hundred killed, six hundred prisoners, one thousand muskets, and four cannon. The American loss was only fourteen killed and forty-two wounded.

9. Burgoyne's Advance.—These defeats, together with the prudent defensive tactics of General Schuyler, proved the ruin of Burgoyne's enterprise. He could not retreat, however, because the militia had begun to collect in his rear. Pushing on to Saratoga, he fortified a camp there. His desperate situation was not understood by Congress or the people. Schuyler's careful campaign was severely criticised, and just as he was about to secure the final victory Congress removed him from the command, and appointed General Horatio Gates in his place. Schuyler obeyed gracefully and welcomed his successor with cordiality.

10. Gates fortified himself on Bemis Heights, near Burgoyne's lines, Kosciuszko acting as his engineer. While awaiting the British attack he sent a detachment under General Lincoln to harass the enemy's flank and rear. On the 19th of September Burgoyne attacked the American

position at Bemis Heights, and a severe battle took place, in which the field was lost and won over and over again in the course of the day. Night put an end to the indecisive conflict. The British lost six hundred men and the Americans three hundred.

11. The American force was now daily increasing in numbers and spirit. Burgoyne, on the contrary, was in extreme distress, and his only hope was in the success of an expedition under Sir Henry Clinton which General Howe had sent up the Hudson to force the passage of the Highlands. The news of the progress of this expedition reached Gates, but was kept from Burgoyne. Clinton did succeed in capturing Forts Clinton and Montgomery (October 6), burned Kingston, and ravaged the country, but his help was too late.

12. Surrender of Burgoyne.—On the 7th of October a severe engagement was fought at Saratoga, when the Americans not only obtained an important advantage in position, but captured what they greatly needed, a full supply of ammunition.

13. During the night Burgoyne fell back to the high grounds in the rear, but Gates, too wary to attack him there, sent a detachment to threaten the enemy's retreat. At last, his provisions being nearly exhausted and his army hemmed in, Burgoyne surrendered at Saratoga on the 17th of October, giving up 5,800 men and 27 pieces of artillery. Gates granted honorable terms to the British, the more readily as he was anxious to hasten the surrender before Burgoyne heard of the capture of the Highlands and the advance of Sir Henry Clinton.

14. Clinton, on being informed of the capitulation of Burgoyne, returned in haste to New York. The capture of a whole British army, and the failure of the invasion which had excited so much alarm, filled the people with exultation. The battles of Saratoga also had an important effect in proving to the Americans that their marksmen were able to withstand the British bayonet.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the object of Burgoyne's expedition?
 2. How was his force composed?
 3. What were the first operations in the campaign?
 4. How did General Schuyler obstruct the British advance?
 5. What did Burgoyne expect of Colonel St. Leger's expedition?
- What occurred near Fort Schuyler?
6. What followed this affair? The result?
 7. What did Burgoyne attempt on his left?
 - 7, 8. Describe the battle of Bennington.
 9. What was now Burgoyne's situation? How was Schuyler treated by the Congress?
 10. Give an account of the battle of Bemis Heights.
 11. What was Burgoyne's last hope? What had Clinton accomplished? Was he in time?
 12. Describe the battle and surrender at Saratoga.
 - 13, 14. What was the effect of the surrender?
-

*CHAPTER XXVIII.**OPERATIONS OF 1778—ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE—BATTLE OF MONMOUTH—MASSACRE OF WYOMING.*

1. The Dark Winter.—Although the surrender of Burgoyne was a great victory for the patriots, their cause still looked dark, and the winter of 1777-78 was the most trying time of the war. Washington's army at Valley Forge was in great misery. The soldiers were without shoes or blankets; the snow was stained by their bleeding feet. They sat all night around the camp-fires for fear of freezing. There was no money to pay them, and little for them to eat. Washington's constancy under these troubles was admirable. His wife, who was popularly called "Lady Washington," spent the winter with him in the camp, and greatly endeared herself to the soldiers by her care of the sick and suffering.

2. The Conway Cabal.—During this anxious time a plot was formed by Generals Conway and Mifflin, aided by a few members of Congress, to force Washington from his command and put Lee or Gates in his place. The scheme, known in history as “the Conway Cabal,” was brought to light; Washington became more popular than ever, and Conway wrote a humble apology.

3. Brighter Prospects.—In the spring the condition of affairs improved. Relief was afforded to the treasury by the patriotism of Robert Morris, a rich merchant of Philadelphia, who raised large sums of money for the government on his personal credit, and continued to serve the country in this way till the end of the war. The British Parliament, alarmed by the surrender of Burgoyne, made an attempt at reconciliation, but the colonists would listen to no proposals short of independence. Johnstone, one of the British commissioners sent over to negotiate terms, was exposed in an attempt to bribe Joseph Reed, the President of Pennsylvania, and was forced to resign his appointment. “I am not worth purchasing,” said Reed, “but such as I am the King of England is not rich enough to buy me.” In a manifesto to the people the British agents tried to excite the bigotry of the Protestant clergy against an alliance with French “papists.”

4. On the whole, the proceedings of the British commissioners intensified the resolution of the Americans to be free. A proposal to acknowledge their independence was made in Parliament; and it was while protesting in the House of Lords against any such “dismemberment of the British Empire” that Lord Chatham fell in an apoplectic fit, dying shortly after.

5. Alliance with France.—But the most important result of the capture of Burgoyne was the determination of the French king to make an open alliance with the colonists and acknowledge their independence. On the 6th of February, 1778, two treaties were signed with the American commissioners in Paris—one of commerce and friendship, the other

of alliance. No peace was to be made until the independence of America was secured. The influence of Franklin, who was a great favorite in Paris, both with the court and with the people, was of the highest service to his country in concluding this affair. War, of course, was declared at once between France and England.

6. The French immediately fitted out a fleet of sixteen large vessels under Count d'Estaing, and despatched it to the Delaware. This obliged the British to evacuate Philadelphia. Their ships, under Lord Howe, sailed for New York, and the troops, now commanded by Sir Henry Clinton, who had succeeded General Howe, marched for the same place.

7. **Battle of Monmouth.**—Washington pursued them with all haste, and after a severe chase came up with them at Monmouth Court-House, New Jersey. There a hard battle was fought, June 28, 1778. The attack was begun by General Charles Lee's division, which was easily beaten and fled in disorder. Washington succeeded in arresting the panic, addressing to Lee on the spot a very severe reprimand, and a general engagement followed, broken off at night without decisive result. Under cover of the darkness Clinton stole away and reached the protection of the fleet at Sandy Hook.

8. The American loss in the battle was about 200 and the British loss 300 ; but the retreat had cost Clinton in killed, wounded, and missing nearly 2,000. For his conduct at Monmouth Lee was arrested and tried by court-martial ; he was acquitted of the most serious charges, but found guilty of disrespectful behavior to the commander-in-chief and suspended for a year. This was the end of his career in the army. He was soon afterwards dismissed for writing an insolent letter to Congress.

9. **Operations of D'Estaing.**—A combined land and naval attack upon Newport was now planned. General Sullivan mustered a large force of American militia for the enterprise, and the French fleet, closely followed by the British,

appeared in Narraganset Bay; but a storm dispersed the ships, and the French commander, abandoning the undertaking, sailed for Boston to repair damages.

10. Massacre of Wyoming.—In July, 1778, a large body of Tories and Indians, commanded by Colonel John Butler, made a raid into the Wyoming valley, on the Susquehanna, opposite the present town of Wilkesbarre (*wilks-barry*), in Pennsylvania. A settlement called Westmoreland had been made here some years before by emigrants from Connecticut and elsewhere, and it now had 2,000 or 3,000 inhabitants, a large proportion of whom, however, were absent in Washington's army. Colonel Butler defeated the small body of soldiers which attempted to oppose him (July 3), and compelled the rest of the people who had taken refuge in Fort Wyoming

to surrender, on promise of security to life and property. Butler, however, was unable to control his savage allies. They massacred about 400 prisoners and civilians, burned the houses, and destroyed the crops; and the survivors, mostly women and children, fled to the mountains, where many of them perished.



BRANT.

11. The cruel policy of arming the savages against the white settlers had been especially urged by King

George III. It had the natural consequence of provoking retaliation, and much misery followed on both sides. The red men under the famous Mohawk chief, Brant, and the loyalists under John Johnson, a son of Sir William (see page 102), for a long time spread terror through Central New York,

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the condition of the American army at Valley Forge? What is said of the behavior of Washington and his wife?
2. What was the Conway Cabal? How did it end?
3. What financial assistance did the treasury receive in the spring? What attempt at reconciliation was made by the British government? How did the English commissioners conduct themselves?
4. What was the result of these proceedings? Under what circumstances did Lord Chatham die?
5. What important change in French policy followed the surrender of Burgoyne? What were the principal terms of the alliance?
6. What force did the French send out? What was the consequence of D'Estaing's arrival?
7. Describe the battle of Monmouth.
8. What were the losses on each side? What was the subsequent history of General Charles Lee?
9. What operation was planned by D'Estaing and Sullivan? How was it defeated?
10. What attack was made upon the Wyoming valley? Describe the massacre.
11. Who specially urged the arming of the savages against the American patriots? What was the consequence of this policy? What famous leaders of the Mohawks and the Tories kept Central New York in terror?

*CHAPTER XXIX.**THE WAR IN THE SOUTH—CAPTURE OF STONY POINT—HOSTILITIES WITH THE INDIANS—EXPLOIT OF JOHN PAUL JONES.*

1. The War transferred to the South.—Washington was now disposed to stand on the defensive while still further strengthening and improving his army. The British, on their part, despairing of success in the middle and northern colonies, determined to strike a blow at the South, and Clinton sent an expedition thither by water.

2. Savannah was easily captured. The whole State of Georgia surrendered. Many of the Tory inhabitants took arms against their countrymen; and in May, 1779, the British General Prevost, after defeating an American force at Brier Creek, crossed into South Carolina to attack Charleston. The city was saved by the rapid march of General Lin-

coln to its relief ; but when Lincoln afterwards attacked the British he was beaten at Stono Ferry (June 20).

3. In September Lincoln undertook to recapture Savannah with the co-operation of Count d'Estaing's fleet. After a siege of a fortnight an assault was made upon the British works by the French and Americans together (October 9). At the end of five hours' fighting, in the course of which the gallant Pulaski was mortally wounded, a truce was arranged for the purpose of burying the dead. The French commander, as on a former occasion, lost heart, refused to renew the attack, and sailed away, and Lincoln was obliged to retire to Charleston. This ended the Southern campaign for that year.

4. Affairs on the Coasts.—At the North the British did all in their power to harass the people by raids upon the coasts. One of the ravaging expeditions, under General Tryon, dispersed a small outpost of Putnam's near Greenwich, Connecticut. Putnam escaped with a bullet through his hat, by riding on horseback down a steep declivity where a long flight of steps had been cut in the bank. Collecting his men, he then hung upon the rear of the British, recaptured some of their plunder, and took fifty prisoners, whom he treated so kindly that the British commander wrote him a letter of thanks.

5. Events on the Hudson.—Washington had ordered the construction of two forts, one at Stony Point on the west bank of the Hudson, the other at Verplanck's Point opposite ; these works commanded the crossing at King's Ferry, just below the entrance to the Highlands. Sir Henry Clinton had captured Stony Point while the works were still unfinished, and Verplanck's Point was obliged thereupon to surrender. Regarding these posts as very important to his army, Washington sent General Wayne (whose daring exploits won for him the name of "Mad Anthony") to attempt their recapture. The plan was Washington's in all its details. Wayne carried it out with splendid success, assaulting Stony

Point with two columns, about one o'clock in the morning (July 16, 1779), killing sixty of the garrison and making all the rest prisoners. The Americans did not fire a gun, but trusted entirely to the bayonet. This has been called one of the most brilliant exploits of the war. It resulted in the capture of a large amount of military stores, and put a stop to the depredations of Tryon on Long Island Sound; and although Verplanck's Point was saved by the arrival of Sir Henry Clinton, and Stony Point had consequently to be evacuated, the British soon abandoned both these places and transferred their troops to the South.

6. A few weeks later there was another gallant affair at Paulus Hook (Jersey City), opposite New York, where Major Henry Lee * surprised the garrison by night (August 18), and brought away one hundred and fifty-nine prisoners.

7. **Hostilities with the Indians.**—In the West the hostility of the Indians, instigated by the British commander at Detroit, was in part counteracted by the daring operations of a force of pioneers under Major Clarke, who captured several of the British posts north of the Ohio. The Six Nations of New York were more formidable, and a considerable military force, including three brigades from Washington's army, was sent against them in the summer of 1779 under the command of Sullivan.

8. Joined by General James Clinton † with another bri-

* The Lees of Virginia played a remarkable part in the American Revolution. Five brothers won more or less fame, the best known being Richard Henry, who introduced the resolution of independence in the Continental Congress and was distinguished as an orator; Francis Lightfoot, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence; and Arthur, who was agent of the colonies in London, and diplomatic agent of the United States successively in Paris, Madrid, and Berlin. Henry Lee, the hero of the exploit above mentioned, was a cousin of these distinguished brothers. He served with great credit through the war, commanding an independent corps, or legion, principally of cavalry, and was known as "Light-Horse Harry," or "Legion Harry." He was a favorite of Washington, to whom he applied the celebrated phrase, "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." Robert E. Lee, the commander-in-chief of the Confederate armies during the Civil War, was his son. General Charles Lee was an Englishman by birth, and belonged to another family.

† There were three generals named Clinton in the Revolution. Sir Henry Clinton was the British commander-in-chief; George and James Clinton, brothers, were distin-

gade, Sullivan gave battle to a large body of Indians and Tories led by Brant, Johnson, and the Butlers, at Newtown, now Elmira (August 29), and routed them. Then he ravaged the Genesee valley, burned all the Indian villages, and destroyed the crops, his purpose being to lay waste the whole region in which the savages found shelter.

9. Naval Affairs.—The American navy was still small, but it was active and enterprising. The cruisers and privateers had captured over five hundred British vessels. Gallant services were performed by James and Samuel Nicholson, Nicholas Biddle, John Barry (an Irish Catholic who was afterwards at the head of the navy), and other brave officers.

10. Commodore Barry—Barry was the first officer who ever took to sea an armed vessel belonging to the American colonies. With this cruiser, the *Lexington*, he promptly captured a British armed tender off the capes of the Delaware. Afterwards, with his boats' crews, he destroyed five British vessels below Philadelphia without losing a man. Blockaded by a superior force, he left his ship in port to join the army; and, like his comrade, Captain James Nicholson, he fought under Washington at the battle of Trenton. He served with great distinction throughout the war, repelling the attempts of the British government to corrupt him; and he died universally respected.

11. John Paul Jones.—This officer was of Scotch birth. In 1778 he made a successful cruise in an eighteen-gun vessel called the *Ranger*, with which he took a large number of prizes. He was then placed in command of a squadron of five vessels fitted out in France, his flag-ship being an old Indiaman altered to a man-of-war, ill-equipped and imperfectly armed; she was named the *Bon Homme Richard*, in allusion to the "Poor Richard" of Dr. Franklin's almanac.

guished officers on the American side, and George became Governor of New York and Vice-President of the United States. De Witt Clinton, an eminent governor of New York, was the son of General James Clinton.

12. With this squadron Jones sailed from L'Orient, France, for the North Sea, and in the course of a month captured or destroyed twenty-six vessels and spread terror along the eastern coast of England. On the 23d of September, 1779, having two of his ships in company, he encountered off Flamborough Head, on the coast of Yorkshire, a fleet of English merchant vessels under convoy of two powerful men-of-war, the *Serapis* and the *Countess of Scarborough*. Jones immediately gave chase, and came up with the *Serapis* soon after nightfall. One of the most terrible engagements on record now took place by moonlight, in full view of crowds of people who lined the shore.

13. The ships lay touching each other, and Jones lashed them together for a furious hand-to-hand combat. After the *Bon Homme Richard* had been dreadfully injured by the bursting of two of her guns the commander of the *Serapis* called out to inquire if she had surrendered. "I have not begun to fight yet," was the reply of the American captain.

14. The battle lasted three hours, when the *Serapis*, a much finer and heavier ship than her antagonist, hauled down her flag. The *Bon Homme Richard* was on fire in two places, and so badly injured that she sank a few hours later, all hands being transferred to the *Serapis*. In the meantime the *Countess of Scarborough* had surrendered to one of the other ships, but the third vessel of Jones's squadron, a frigate commanded by a French officer named Landais, gave no help in the victory.*

QUESTIONS.

1. To what point did the British now transfer the war?
2. What city and State did they capture? What was the result of their attempt upon Charleston?
3. Give an account of Lincoln's enterprise against Savannah. How was it foiled?

* Landais gave great trouble to the Americans. He was finally declared insane and dismissed the service.

4. Give an account of Putnam's adventure near Greenwich.
 5. What important forts were taken by the British in the Highlands? Whom did Washington send to recapture them? Give an account of the storming of Stony Point. What was the effect of this exploit?
 6. What was Major Lee's exploit at Paulus Hook?
 7. What Indian tribes did the British rouse to hostilities in New York? Whom did Washington send against them?
 8. Give an account of Sullivan's campaign.
 9. What is said of the American navy?
 10. Give a sketch of Commodore Barry.
 11. What officer commanded a squadron fitted out in France in 1779? What was the name of his flag-ship?
 12. What did he accomplish in the North Sea? What occurred off the Yorkshire coast?
 - 13, 14. Give an account of the battle.
-

CHAPTER XXX.

CAPTURE OF CHARLESTON—OUTRAGES IN THE SOUTH—DEFEAT OF GATES—THE PARTISAN BANDS.

1. Capture of Charleston.—Sir Henry Clinton directed the next campaign at the South in person. With a fleet and a strong land force he appeared in February, 1780, before Charleston, where General Lincoln commanded a small garrison of Continentals. The city was gradually invested; the American detachments which tried to keep open communication with the country were defeated; and Lincoln, who ought to have retired, while he had a chance, from a place which he was too weak to defend, was forced to surrender May 12, the soldiers and male citizens becoming prisoners of war. The town was plundered, and the negroes were shipped to the West Indies to be sold.

2. British Outrages.—Clinton now sent out expeditions to scour the State, and the war assumed a cruel and brutal

character from which it was generally free in the North. Colonel Tarleton, of the British regulars, and Major Ferguson, who commanded a band of Tories, were especially notorious for their severities. On one occasion Tarleton massacred in cold blood over a hundred men of a Virginia regiment who were offering no resistance, but suing for quarter.

3. When Clinton returned to the North, leaving the Carolinas in the hands of Lord Cornwallis, the barbarities were increased. The people were forcibly enrolled for military service under the hated British flag; even prisoners on parole were driven into the ranks to fight against their country. Numbers of the patriots were imprisoned or hanged, and their property was confiscated; women were beaten; the Cherokee Indians were encouraged to take arms.

4. **Partisan Bands.**—Under this reign of terror the spirit of resistance was kept alive by numerous bands of patriots, who hovered around the British detachments and kept them in constant alarm. One of the most famous of the partisan leaders was Sumter, whose force, after winning some successes, was almost annihilated by Tarleton near the Catawba River (August 18). Another was Marion, who kept the country between the Pedee and Santee in arms. Pickens and Clarke were commanders of corps in the western part of the State.

5. **Gates in the South.**—Against the wishes of Washington, Congress appointed General Gates to the command of the Southern department, and this greatly overrated officer, collecting about six thousand men, marched precipitately against Cornwallis near Camden, in middle South Carolina. He was surprised on the road at two o'clock in the morning (August 16) and disgracefully beaten. He had placed the worst of his new militia-men in front; they ran at the first onset, and nearly two-thirds of the army scattered without firing a shot. The brave Baron de Kalb was mortally wounded in trying to save the day. Gates fled

to North Carolina, leaving his fugitive soldiers to take care of themselves. Soon afterward he was removed from his command.

6. Cornwallis next entered North Carolina, but here his progress was checked by a disaster to Ferguson's corps of Tories, who were surprised at King's Mountain by a body of backwoodsmen and Virginia militia under Colonel Campbell. The whole command was either killed or captured



MAP OF THE CAROLINAS.

(October 7), Ferguson himself being among the slain. Sad to say, several of the prisoners were hanged on the spot, in revenge for the cruelties of the Tories.

7. When Cornwallis now retreated into the northwestern part of South Carolina, the whole country seemed to rise in arms. Marion, who could boast that he never burned houses or distressed women and children, continually harassed the British soldiers, and defied pursuit by the rapidity and

secrecy of his movements. Sumter appeared at the head of a considerable force, and defeated Tarleton, who was sent to crush him.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who commanded the British in the next Southern campaign? Describe the capture of Charleston.
2. What was the character of the war in South Carolina? What British officers were especially notorious for their severities?
3. What occurred after the command was left to Lord Cornwallis?
4. What were the partisan bands? Name some of their leaders.
5. Whom did Congress appoint to the command in the South? Give an account of the battle near Camden. What became of Gates?
6. How was the progress of Cornwallis checked?
7. What followed this affair?

CHAPTER XXXI.

TREASON OF BENEDICT ARNOLD—EXECUTION OF MAJOR ANDRÉ.

1. **The Crime of Arnold**—Washington during these transactions had his headquarters at Morristown, New Jersey, where he was in great straits to maintain his destitute and discontented army. A danger threatened him from a source which he little suspected.

2. General Benedict Arnold, though a brave and able soldier, was a vicious and treacherous man. He entered into a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and agreed to betray his country for a large sum of money and a commission in the British army. In order to carry out this infamous design he asked and obtained from Washington the command of West Point.

3. His plan was to surrender this important post to the British. The details were arranged through Major André, an accomplished young officer of Sir Henry Clinton's staff,

and after the interchange of several letters it was agreed that André should meet Arnold by night near Haverstraw on the Hudson, which was neutral ground between the English and American lines. André landed from the sloop-of-war *Vulture*, and the last particulars of the treachery were settled at the promised interview. The *Vulture*, however, was driven some distance down the river by the American batteries, and, unable to return to her, André was obliged to cross the Hudson



CAPTURE OF MAJOR ANDRÉ.

and attempt to reach New York by land, passing the American lines in disguise.

4. Capture of André.—This rendered him liable to be hanged as a spy if he was caught. Arnold, however, had given him an order instructing the sentries to pass “Mr. John Anderson” on public business. Near Tarrytown he was arrested by three patriot militia-men, Paulding, Van Wart, and

Williams, whom he at first mistook for Tory refugees. An incautious expression aroused their suspicions ; they refused to recognize Arnold's pass, and insisted upon searching their prisoner. In his boots they found a plan of West Point and other papers which disclosed the whole plot ; and, rejecting the large reward which he offered them for his liberty, they conducted him to the nearest American post, at Northcastle.

5. Execution of André.—The greatest pity was felt for André, but under the laws of war there could be no hesitation as to his fate. He was tried by a board of fourteen generals, with Greene at the head, condemned as a spy, and hanged at Tappan, near the Hudson, October 2, 1780. Each of his captors received from Congress a silver medal and a life pension of two hundred dollars.

6. Arnold made his escape to the *Vulture*. He received about thirty thousand dollars for his perfidy. He bore arms against his country with the rank of brigadier-general ; but he was despised and insulted by the English to whom he had sold himself, and he died in London in obscurity.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was Washington occupied during these transactions at the South ?
2. What criminal purpose was conceived by Benedict Arnold ?
3. How were the details of the surrender negotiated ?
4. Give an account of the capture of André.
5. What was his fate ? What was Arnold's reward ?

CHAPTER XXXII.

ARRIVAL OF COUNT ROCHAMBEAU—REVOLT AMONG THE TROOPS— GREENE IN THE SOUTH.

1. More Aid from France.—As an offset to the effect of Arnold's perfidy, the Americans were cheered by the news of further assistance from France, obtained largely by the personal efforts of Lafayette, aided by the influence of Queen Marie Antoinette. Count Rochambeau with six thousand troops, and Admiral de Ternay with a fleet (replacing D'Estaing, who had gone home), arrived at Newport in July, 1780, and more troops and vessels were to follow. The most cordial relations were established between the French and American soldiers, and the French officers showed the highest admiration for Washington and his principal officers. The British Admiral Arbuthnot, however, succeeded in shutting up De Ternay at Newport, and for some time the French contingent was of no use.

2. Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line.—The troops at Morristown suffered a great deal during the next winter (1780-81), and complained bitterly at not receiving their pay; besides which there was a dispute as to the time for which they had been enlisted. On New Year's day, 1781, the men of the Pennsylvania line, thirteen hundred strong, marched out of camp and started for Philadelphia with arms in their hands to demand redress from Congress. General Wayne attempted to stop them, but they threatened to run him through with the bayonet. A captain was killed and several other officers were wounded.

3. At Princeton the agents of Sir Henry Clinton urged them to desert to the British, but the soldiers, though they were mutineers, were not traitors; they arrested the agents

and delivered them to General Wayne as spies. A committee of Congress was sent to treat with the troops, and it was agreed to accept the understanding of the men as to their term of enlistment, to provide them with clothing, and to make certain arrangements for their pay. A dangerous revolt was thus checked, but nearly all the Pennsylvanians obtained their discharge, and the effect of this successful mutiny upon the rest of the army was very bad. A rising of New Jersey regiments a few days later was put down by force, and two of the ringleaders were shot.

4. Campaign in the South.—The direction of affairs in the South had now been entrusted to Major-General Greene, who had always been Washington's first choice for that important duty. Steuben aided him in the reorganization of an army. Henry Lee with his famous legion was detached to serve under him; and he had the assistance also of General Morgan, an enterprising officer already in South Carolina with an independent command.

5. The Cowpens.—The first movement of Cornwallis was an attempt to prevent the junction of Morgan with Greene's main body. Morgan defeated this plan by a rapid retreat towards North Carolina. At a place called the Cowpens, near the battle-field of King's Mountain, he turned to face his pursuers, defeating Tarleton's light division, and inflicting upon it a loss of six hundred men, with all the artillery and baggage, while Morgan's own loss was only eighty (January 17, 1781).

6. Morgan now hastened his march towards Greene, and Cornwallis made extraordinary exertions to overtake him, even burning his stores and superfluous baggage in order to move the faster. Twice the Americans were saved by high water in the rivers, which suddenly rose after they had crossed, and delayed their pursuers.

7. When the Americans were at last united under Greene in Central North Carolina, they numbered little more than two thousand men, quite unfit to meet the larger and better-

appointed army of the enemy. Some weeks of manœuvring and skirmishing followed, in which Greene, always on the march, and never encamping twice in the same place, baffled Cornwallis until the arrival of some volunteers encouraged the Americans to offer battle.

8. Battle of Guilford Court-House.—The engagement took place at Guilford Court-House, near the present town of Greensborough, North Carolina, March 15, 1781. At the first assault many of the raw troops broke and ran, and the advantage for some time was decidedly with the British. Greene's veteran Continentals, however, though few in number, were fully equal to the British regulars, and their steadiness turned the fortunes of the day. Cornwallis only extricated a part of his regiments by playing his artillery full in the face of his own men and cutting down friend and foe together.

9. Deserted by a large part of his own men, Greene was nevertheless obliged to fall back after the battle. The appearance of victory, therefore, remained with the British, but all the substantial advantages fell to the Americans. Cornwallis had suffered so severely that he had to retire towards the sea-coast and give up his plan of campaign. Greene's generalship was universally applauded.

10. Greene in South Carolina.—After pursuing Cornwallis towards Wilmington, Greene formed the bold plan of marching past him and recovering South Carolina, where the British held a chain of posts extending from Camden westward to Fort Ninety-six, and thence to Augusta and Charleston. Cornwallis, when he discovered this movement, resolved to imitate it by invading Virginia. Greene wisely left Virginia to be cared for by others, and continued his march.

11. In the course of the spring and summer fort after fort fell into Greene's hands, in most cases after hard fighting. At Eutaw Springs, September 8, 1781, Greene fought the British main body under Colonel Stuart, each side losing about six hundred men, and both claiming the victory. The

practical advantages, however, remained with the Americans, and by the beginning of the next year the British retained only Charleston in South Carolina, and Savannah in Georgia. Thus in one campaign, fought with a small and disaffected army in the midst of a Tory population, Greene had restored two States to the Union and practically put an end to the war in the South.

QUESTIONS.

1. What aid was received from France in 1780? Where did the French troops land? Who was their commander? Through whose influence were they obtained? What is said of the intercourse between the French and American soldiers?

2. What complaints were made by Washington's army? What was done by the Pennsylvania troops?

3. How did they treat Sir Henry Clinton's proposal that they should desert? How was the revolt brought to an end?

4. What general was assigned to the Southern department after the failure of Gates? Who were the principal officers with him?

5. What was the first movement of Cornwallis? How did Morgan counteract it? Give an account of the battle of the Cowpens.

6. Describe the march of Morgan and Cornwallis.

7. Where did Morgan at last unite with Greene? What were Greene's tactics?

8. Describe the battle of Guilford Court-House.

9. What were the results of the battle?

10. What bold plan did Greene adopt? What was Cornwallis's course?

11. What did Greene accomplish in South Carolina? What is said of the battle of Eutaw Springs? What was the result of Greene's campaign?

CHAPTER XXXIII.

SIEGE OF YORKTOWN—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS—THE END OF THE WAR.

1. **Cornwallis in Virginia.**—The march of Cornwallis into Virginia was the final British mistake which put an end to the war. After ravaging the banks of the James River, and making some futile demonstrations against Lafayette, who commanded in that quarter, Cornwallis transferred his army to the Yorktown peninsula, between the James and York rivers, believing that, under the protection of the British fleet, he would there be favorably situated for further operations (August, 1781).

2. If the fleet failed him, however, he would be in a trap. Washington saw the blunder at once, and lost not a moment in taking advantage of it. In concert with the French Admiral De Grasse, who had been cruising in the West Indies, he had planned an attack upon New York; but the expedition was promptly diverted to Virginia. Rochambeau with the French troops marched out of Newport and joined Washington in the Highlands.

3. The movements of the allies were so adroitly managed that Clinton supposed they were still directed against New York. He did not discover the truth until Washington had reached the Delaware. It was then too late to intercept him; but Sir Henry sent an expedition under Benedict Arnold to ravage Connecticut, in the hope of thus forcing Washington to turn back.

4. **Arnold's Depredations.**—It was not the first time Arnold had been employed on such service. When Greene began his Southern campaign, the renegade had been despatched to Virginia to make a diversion in aid of Cornwallis, and he then devastated the plantations on the James and set fire

to Richmond. He now plundered and burned New London (September 6), and a part of his command took Fort Griswold, at Groton, on the opposite side of the Thames River. After the surrender the brave American Colonel Ledyard and about sixty of his men were massacred by the victors. The officer responsible for this disgraceful crime was Major Bromfield, a New Jersey loyalist.

5. The militia of Connecticut quickly assembled, and Arnold hastened back to New York. This marauding expedition into his native State was his last appearance in American history. It did not have the effect which Sir Henry Clinton intended, for Washington kept on his march.

6. **The Siege of Yorktown.**—In the meantime Lafayette, who showed great skill and gallantry, disposed his command across the upper end of the peninsula so that Cornwallis could not advance; and De Grasse, reaching the Chesapeake in advance of the English fleet which had sailed from New York to intercept him, blocked up the James and York rivers. In a naval engagement off the capes of the Chesapeake, the British were so badly damaged that they had to return to New York. By the end of September the forces of Washington, Rochambeau, and Lafayette were united on the Yorktown peninsula, and the investment of Cornwallis was complete.

7. The peninsula is about eight miles wide at Yorktown, and across this neck of land the British had constructed a line of fortifications. The siege was pushed with great rapidity. On the 14th of October two of the British redoubts were taken by assault simultaneously, one by the French, the other by the Americans. Cornwallis attempted a sally, but it failed. He then tried to escape across the York River, with the hope of breaking through the lines on that side and pushing for New York, but a violent storm dispersed his boats and the desperate scheme had to be abandoned.

8. **Surrender of Cornwallis.**—The result of an assault could not be doubtful, and on the 17th of October, 1781,

Cornwallis proposed to Washington a suspension of hostilities to arrange terms of surrender. On the 19th the whole British army (seven thousand men) marched out and laid down their arms. Over one hundred cannon were given up and \$11,000 in money, and at the same time the British vessels of war in the rivers, with about eight hundred sailors, surrendered to Admiral de Grasse. The allied army at the siege of Yorktown consisted of 5,500 Continentals, 3,500 militia, and 7,000 French.

9. This was generally regarded as the end of the war. The country gave way to transports of joy. There were rejoicings in all the camps and illuminations in the cities, and Congress voted honors to Washington, Rochambeau, De Grasse, and others, and proclaimed a day of general thanksgiving. When the news was told the British minister, Lord North, "he took it," said an eye-witness, "as he would have taken a ball in the breast, for he opened his arms, exclaiming wildly as he paced up and down the apartment, 'It is all over!'"

10. **Peace.**—The obstinate King George III. was still resolved "never to consent to a peace at the expense of a separation from America," but the temper of the English people was very different. The city of London petitioned the king to put a stop to this "unnatural and unfortunate war"; a resolution in favor of peace, supported by Fox, the younger Pitt, Barré, Burke, and others, passed the House of Commons February 27, 1782; the king was compelled to dismiss Lord North and to accept a ministry headed by the Marquis of Rockingham,* who was committed to the policy of peace; and commissioners were appointed on both sides to negotiate a treaty, hostilities being stopped in the interval.

11. The commissioners met in Paris, those of the

* Rockingham died three months later, and his successor, Lord Shelburne, was the minister under whose administration the independence of the United States was acknowledged.

United States being John Adams, John Jay, Benjamin Franklin, and Henry Laurens. A preliminary treaty was signed November 30, 1782. Congress ratified the action of the commissioners in March, and a proclamation announcing the end of the war was published in Washington's camp at Newburg on the 19th of April, 1783, just eight years to a day after the battle of Lexington. The definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris^s September 3, 1783.

12. Disaffection in the Army.—During the progress of the negotiations the temper of the American army was far from satisfactory. Unpaid and often suffering from absolute hunger, the soldiers became restless under their wrongs, and a portion of them seem to have been anxious to establish a military despotism. In May, 1782, a letter was addressed to Washington advising him to declare himself king—a proposal to which he returned an indignant reply.

13. In the following March an anonymous appeal was circulated in the camp at Newburg, advising the soldiers to organize for the purpose of enforcing their demands upon Congress. To counteract this movement Washington called all the officers together, and, making them a sensible and patriotic address, succeeded in dispelling the danger. Afterwards he induced Congress to give every officer on his discharge a sum equal to five years' pay.

14. Congress and the States had both treated the army badly ; but the country was very poor, and, after spending nearly \$100,000,000 during the war, the treasury found itself at the end about \$40,000,000 in debt. This did not include the outlay of the separate States, which amounted to \$60,000,000 or \$70,000,000 more.

15. On the 25th of November, 1783, the last of the British evacuated New York, and Washington's troops marched in by way of King's Bridge. On the 2d of November Washington issued his farewell address to the army ; on December 4 he took leave of his officers at New York ; on December 23 he formally resigned his commission to

Congress, then in session at Annapolis, and immediately retired to his home at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac, in Virginia.

QUESTIONS.

1. What did Cornwallis do in Virginia?
2. Why was this movement a mistake? What did Washington do when he discovered the blunder?
3. Describe the French and American movements. How did Clinton try to thwart them?
4. Give an account of Arnold's raids.
5. Had his expedition the intended effect?
6. How did Lafayette dispose his troops before Yorktown? What was done by the French Admiral De Grasse? How were the armies posted on the arrival of Washington?
7. Describe the siege of Yorktown.
8. Give an account of the surrender. What was the date?
9. How was the news received in America? In England?
10. What was the disposition of King George III.? How was his obstinacy overcome?
11. Where did the peace commissioners meet? Who represented the United States? When was the preliminary treaty signed? The definitive treaty? How long had the war lasted?
12. What is said of the temper of the American army? What proposal was made to Washington? What was his answer?
13. What occurred at Newburg? What did Washington do?
14. Had the soldiers been well treated? What could be said in excuse for Congress and the States?
15. When did the British evacuate New York? When did Washington resign his commission?

PART FOURTH.

THE UNION.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

THE CONSTITUTION—ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON—DISPUTES WITH ENGLAND.

1. The Confederation.—The States were governed during the latter part of the war by “Articles of Confederation,” proposed by Congress at the time of the Declaration of Independence, but not adopted until 1781. Nearly all power was reserved to the separate States; Congress had little authority; there was no president or other executive chief; and it was soon found that this system produced endless confusion. In particular it left the country without means of providing for the common defence or regulating commerce or the finances.

2. Shays's Rebellion.—An extensive rebellion in Massachusetts, led by an ex-captain in the Continental army named Daniel Shays (December, 1786), and directed against the collection of taxes, etc., was put down by a militia force under General Lincoln after a short but very active campaign. This served to strengthen the popular conviction that some change was necessary in the form of government, and a convention to revise the Articles of Confederation met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. Washington was unanimously chosen president of this assembly.

3. The Constitution.—Instead of amending the old Arti-

cles, the convention advised a new Constitution. It was to go into operation March 4, 1789, if two-thirds of the States gave their assent. After much discussion it was ratified by all the States—by Delaware first in December, 1787, and by Rhode Island last in May, 1790. On the 4th of March, 1789, eleven of the thirteen States had approved it, and on that day accordingly the old Confederation came to an end and the Union began.

4. New York was selected as a temporary seat of government, and the old City Hall in Wall Street was given up to the use of Congress. Electors were chosen in January to cast the votes of their respective States for President and Vice-President.



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

5. **Washington President.**—When the votes were counted it appeared that George Washington was unanimously chosen President, and John Adams was chosen Vice-President.

Washington's journey from Mount Vernon to New York was like a triumphal procession. The people turned out everywhere to show their gratitude and respect towards him. At Elizabethtown he went aboard a splendid barge constructed for the occasion and magnificently decorated. It was rowed by thirteen masters of vessels, dressed in white, and commanded by Commodore Nicholson. Other barges followed. As they proceeded through New York Bay a multitude of vessels decked with flags surrounded them, thousands of boats appeared upon the waters, and the ships of war of different nations manned their yards, spread their colors, and fired salutes. The in-

auguration took place on the 30th of April in the midst of universal rejoicings.

6. Thomas Jefferson was appointed Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton Secretary of the Treasury, and General Henry Knox Secretary of War. With the aid of these able men Washington administered the government wisely, proving himself hardly less valuable to his country in peace than he had been in war. The skill of Hamilton in reducing the finances to order and restoring the ruined credit of the nation deserves to be especially remembered. The seat of government was transferred to Philadelphia in 1790, with the understanding that in 1800 it should be permanently established in a new city on the banks of the Potomac.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

7. **Indian War in the Northwest.**—As white settlers began to pour into the West, the Indians in the valley of the Ohio became hostile. They murdered many of the immigrants and defeated General Harmer in 1790 and General St. Clair in 1791. "Mad Anthony Wayne" was then sent against them. He devastated their villages, and at last inflicted upon them a signal defeat near the present site of Maumee City, Ohio (August 20, 1794), which obliged them to sue for peace.

8. **Washington's Second Term.**—The second election for President occurred in 1792, Washington's term ending on the 4th of March, 1793. Washington was again the unanimous choice of the electors, and Adams was re-elected Vice-President. Political parties, however, had become sharply divided.

The Federalists, among whom were Washington, Adams, and Hamilton, believed in a strong central government. The Anti-Federalists, known also as Democrats or Republicans (those two names being used at that time indifferently to designate the same party), wished to limit the power of the federal government and give more independent authority to the States. Their ablest leader was Jefferson.

9. Relations with France.—The dissensions of parties at home were intensified by the course of affairs in France. The most terrible scenes of the French Revolution were enacted during the first years of the American republic. King Louis XVI. was beheaded a few weeks before the end of Washington's first term, and Queen Marie Antoinette, who had so warmly befriended America during the struggle for independence, was executed a few months afterward. Jefferson and the Anti-Federalists sympathized strongly with the French revolutionists, and wished to aid them in their struggle against the European powers. Washington and the Federalists insisted upon preserving a strict neutrality.

10. Genest (*zhen-dy*), or "Citizen Genest," as he called himself after the affected manner of the revolutionists, arrived as minister from the French republic in 1793. The Jeffersonian party treated him with exaggerated favor, of which he took great advantage. He boldly commissioned privateers in American ports, tried to embroil the country in war with England and Spain, stirred up popular faction against this government, insulted President Washington, and behaved with so much insolence that the President demanded his recall. Party feeling over the affair ran high, but Washington's dignified conduct was finally approved.

11. Relations with England.—Our relations with England at the same time were becoming more and more unfriendly. Great Britain kept possession of the forts in the Northwest which should have been surrendered under the treaty of 1783, and a still more serious cause of offence was

her claim of the right to search American ships at sea and carry off sailors supposed to be British subjects, even those naturalized in America. England, being at war with France, also seized American ships found carrying grain to France, and confiscated all French property on American vessels.

12. John Jay was sent to London, and succeeded in negotiating a treaty (1794) which settled some of the causes of complaint, but left the question of the impressment of seamen to be a cause of future trouble. The treaty was ratified after much opposition. It greatly incensed the French, and they in their turn began to plunder American commerce.

13. The Whiskey Insurrection.—In 1794 a violent disturbance was created in Western Pennsylvania by the refusal of the people to pay a tax on whiskey. Secret societies were organized to resist the collection of the duty, the officers of the law were attacked, and the outrages soon amounted to an insurrection. The President called out fifteen thousand militia from Pennsylvania and other States, and this display of force quelled the revolt without a battle.

14. During the political quarrels of his administration Washington had not escaped abuse and misrepresentation. He was even accused of wishing to establish a monarchy; but his just and noble character at last conquered even his enemies. He would probably have been unanimously re-elected for a third term had he not refused to let his name be used.

15. In September, 1796, he published his famous Farewell Address, in which he announced his fixed resolve to retire to private life, and left to his countrymen a precious political legacy. He warned them especially against the dangers of disunion, and besought them to frown indignantly "upon the first dawning of every attempt to alienate any portion of our country from the rest."

QUESTIONS.

1. How were the States governed at this time? What were the principal defects of the Articles of Confederation?
2. What was Shays's Rebellion? What effect had it on the public mind? Where did the convention to revise the Articles of Confederation meet?
3. What was done? When did the Constitution take effect?
4. Where was the first seat of government?
5. Who were chosen President and Vice-President? When was Washington inaugurated?
6. Who were his principal secretaries? What is said of Hamilton? To what city was the government removed in 1790?
7. How were the Indian hostilities in the Ohio valley repressed?
8. When did the second presidential election take place? Who were chosen? What were the two political parties called? What were their principles? Who were their leaders?
9. How were American politics affected by affairs in France?
10. How did the Jeffersonian party treat the French minister, Genest? How did Genest conduct himself? What did Washington do?
11. What causes of disagreement were there with Great Britain? What was the most serious of these controversies?
12. What treaty was negotiated in 1794? How was it received?
13. What was the Whiskey Insurrection? How did Washington act?
14. What is said of the popular treatment of Washington? Of a third term?
15. When did he publish his Farewell Address? What advice did he give?

CHAPTER XXXV.

SETTLEMENT OF THE WEST.

1. Organization and Settlement of the West.—By the treaty of 1783 the Mississippi River was recognized as the western boundary of the United States, but nearly half of the territory included within the national limits was unoccupied and unorganized. Several of the older States—Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia—claimed, under their colonial charters or other titles, the proprietorship of an undefined tract of western lands. They were induced to cede to the general government the jurisdiction over all this country, Virginia and Connecticut, however, reserving the title to 7,000,000 acres in the present State of Ohio.

2. One of the important acts of Congress under the Confederation was the adoption of an ordinance for the government of this ceded district (1787). It erected the whole region north of the Ohio into the Northwest Territory, and on the proposal of Jefferson it was enacted that slavery should never be tolerated in the territory or any of the States to be formed out of it. In this region are now included Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, and a part of Minnesota.

3. In Illinois there were already several small towns, Cahokia, Kaskaskia, and some other settlements having been founded by the French under La Salle nearly a hundred years before. Vincennes, in Indiana, had been settled by the French about 1702. There were also French settlements in Michigan at the outlets of Lakes Michigan, Superior, and Huron. Ohio, which did not receive a separate organization until 1800, was at this time a wilderness; the first permanent settlement within its boundaries was made at Marietta in

1788, and named in honor of Queen Marie Antoinette. After the separation of Ohio the name of Indiana was given to all the rest of the Northwest Territory.

4. The settlement of Kentucky was begun before the Revolution by the daring hunter, explorer, and Indian fighter, Daniel Boone, who crossed the mountains from North Carolina in 1769, spent two years in the unbroken wilderness, much of the time entirely alone, and later removed to that region with his family, founding Boonesborough in 1775. Kentucky was made a county of Virginia; but it was so remote that the people depended chiefly upon themselves for government as well as for defence against the Indians. At one time a party among them wished to form an independent sovereignty—a scheme which was secretly promoted by the Spaniards. In 1790 the territory was separated from Virginia, and the next year it was admitted to the Union as a State. In 1785 a colony of Catholics from Maryland emigrated to Kentucky, and this was followed by other colonies from the same State in 1786, 1787, and 1788. The Catholic settlements were principally in and near Bardstown.

5. Tennessee was settled from North Carolina and formed a part of that State. In 1785 the inhabitants organized themselves as the State of Frankland; but North Carolina never acquiesced in the secession, and the new State fell to pieces about 1788. Having been ceded to the general government, the district was organized with Kentucky as the Territory South of the Ohio. It became a State of the Union in 1796.

6. **Other States.**—Alabama and Mississippi were divided from Georgia in 1798 and erected into the Territory of Mississippi. Their southern boundaries were undetermined, those portions which now touch the Gulf of Mexico being at that time a part of Florida, which belonged to Spain. Vermont had long been in dispute between New York and New Hampshire. The British government, before the Revolution, decided in favor of the claim of New York; but the Green Mountain Boys, under Ethan Allen and Seth Warner,

violently resisted the New York authorities. In 1777 the people declared themselves independent. New York finally sold her claims for \$30,000 (1791), and Vermont was admitted to the Union as a State.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the western boundary of the United States under the treaty of 1783? What did the older States do with their western lands?

2. What did Congress do with these lands?

3. What French settlements were there in the West? What was the first settlement in Ohio?

4. Who was the pioneer of Kentucky? Give some account of his adventures. What Catholic immigration did Kentucky receive?

5. From what State was Tennessee settled? Give an account of the State of Frankland.

6. How were Alabama and Mississippi formed? What States claimed the Territory of Vermont? What was the action of the Vermont people in this matter? How was the dispute settled?

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE UNITED STATES AT THE END OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. The Church in the United States.—At the time of the Revolution there were very few Catholic churches in the United States. We have already seen how the Catholic religion was planted in Maryland, but even there the members of the faith formed but a small minority of the population. Maryland, however, became the cradle of the American clergy, being the seat of the first bishopric, and the asylum of a number of zealous Jesuits and other priests, who went thence to various parts of the Union.

2. In Pennsylvania, at the close of the war of independence, there had been churches or mission stations for many years at Philadelphia, Lancaster, Conewago, and other places. The venerable Father Farmer, who died at Philadelphia in 1786, labored in Pennsylvania for more than forty years. A great many Irish had emigrated to Pennsylvania, and in 1790 the Catholics were so numerous that Matthew Carey ventured to publish in Philadelphia the first edition of the Douay Bible printed in America.

3. There were Jesuit missionaries among the Indians of the northern and interior parts of the State of New York from an early period (see pp. 33, 63), and three fathers of the same society were settled in New York City between 1683 and 1690 (see p. 80); but at the time of the Revolution the number of Catholics in the town was insignificant. The spirit of the colony was bitterly intolerant, and in the first constitution of the State, adopted in 1777, Catholics were excluded from the privilege of naturalization. This clause

was inserted at the instance of John Jay, afterwards chief-justice of the United States.

4. The French posts in the Mississippi valley were regularly attended by chaplains, so that when the western settlements came into the possession of the United States the Catholic religion had already a foothold among them. About the middle of the last century there were several Jesuit stations in Indiana, with a church at Vincennes. The Jesuits, however, were afterwards withdrawn, and for many years the only priest in the territory now constituting Indiana and Illinois was the Rev. Mr. Gibault, who was vicar-general for that region under the Bishop of Quebec. He lived at Kaskaskia, in the southwestern part of Illinois.

5. In 1778 Father Gibault induced the French inhabitants of Vincennes to declare in favor of the United States against Great Britain, and he administered the oath of allegiance to them in the church. He also had great influence in keeping the Indians friendly to the American cause.

6. The Catholics during the war of independence were practically unanimous in supporting the patriot side. They contributed many eminent men to the service of the country, including General Moylan in the army, Commodore Barry in the navy, and Charles Carroll, Daniel Carroll, and Thomas Fitzsimmons in Congress; they raised an Irish regiment in the Pennsylvania line; and on Washington's election to the Presidency they presented an address of congratulation, to which the general replied: "I presume that your fellow-citizens will not forget the patriotic part which you took in the accomplishment of their revolution and the establishment of their government, or the important assistance which they received from a nation in which the Roman Catholic faith is professed."

7. The tyranny of Puritanism in New England had broken down under its own excesses; and although bigotry

was by no means extinct, yet the conspicuous patriotism of the Catholics in America, and the aid given to the American cause by Catholic France, produced a powerful effect. At the close of the war a solemn *Te Deum* was chanted in St. Joseph's Church, Philadelphia, by request of the French ambassador, and Washington, Lafayette, and many distinguished official persons were present.

8. Immediately after the peace Mass was celebrated at stated intervals in New York City by Father Farmer, who used to come from Philadelphia for the purpose, and hold service in a loft over a carpenter's shop. The first church, St. Peter's, in Barclay Street, was begun in 1786. The first priest settled in the city after the war was Father Charles Whelan, an Irish Franciscan, who had been a chaplain in the French fleet.

9. At the date of the first national census (1790) it was estimated by Bishop Carroll that the Catholics of the United States numbered 30,000, or one in every hundred of the total population. There were about 16,000 in Maryland, 7,000 in Pennsylvania, 5,500 among the French settlements of the West, and only 1,500 in all the rest of the country.

10. **Increase of the Clergy.**—In 1789 Father John Carroll, who had for some years administered the affairs of the American Church with the rank of prefect-apostolic, was appointed bishop, and Baltimore was created the first see in the United States. The diocese embraced the whole Union, and contained thirty or forty priests.

11. The first care of the new bishop was to provide for Catholic education. He had already begun the erection of Georgetown College (1788), and it was opened by the Jesuits in 1791. He induced the Sulpitians in Paris to send over Father Nagot with several assistants to open a theological seminary in Baltimore (1791). The first community of nuns in the United States was established by Carmelites in 1790 at Port Tobacco, Maryland, whence

they removed to Baltimore after a few years and opened a school.*

12. The Reign of Terror in France drove a great many estimable French priests to the United States, where Bishop Carroll gave them welcome and employment. Among the most distinguished of these exiles who arrived between 1791 and 1796 were Messrs. Dubois (afterwards Bishop of New York), Flaget (first Bishop of Bardstown and Louisville), David (coadjutor to Bishop Flaget), Dubourg (afterwards Bishop of New Orleans), Maréchal (who became Archbishop of Baltimore), Richard (a missionary in Michigan and delegate in Congress from that territory), Ciquard (who devoted himself to the Indians in Maine), Garnier, Tessier, Barrière, Matignon (settled for many years in Boston), and Cheverus (first Bishop of Boston and afterwards Cardinal Archbishop of Bordeaux).

13. Mr. Stephen Badin, another of the French exiles, received orders in Baltimore in 1793, being the first priest ordained in the United States. He became a missionary in the West. The second priest ordained in the United States (1795) was the celebrated Russian Prince Demetrius Augustine Gallitzin, who gave up an illustrious position and a vast fortune to become a missionary, under the name of "Father Smith," in Western Pennsylvania. He founded a Catholic colony at Loretto, in Cambria County, giving away lands to the settlers and spending about \$150,000 in the charitable enterprise. He is called the "Apostle of the Alleghanies."

14. Father Leonard Neale, a native of Maryland, was consecrated coadjutor to Bishop Carroll (1800), and succeeded him in the archbishopric of Baltimore. Neale and Carroll were both Jesuits. The Rev. John Thayer, a Congregationalist minister of Boston, became a Catholic in 1783, and, being ordained priest in France, was appointed pastor in Boston, where he labored with great success.

* There were Ursulines much earlier in New Orleans, but that place did not then belong to the United States.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of Catholics in the United States at the time of the Revolution? Of the Church in Maryland? 2. In Pennsylvania? 3. Among the Indians of New York? In New York City? What was done to Catholics in the first Constitution of the State? 4. What is said of the Catholic Church in the West? 5. What service was rendered to the patriots by Father Gibault? 6. What was the attitude of the Catholics during the Revolution? Name some of their principal laymen. 7. What lessened the bigotry of Protestants? 8. What was the first church in New York City? 9. How many Catholics were there in 1790? In what States were most of them found? 10. Who was the first American bishop? 11. What did he do for education? 12. What event sent a number of priests to America? Name some of them. 13. Who was the first priest ordained in this country? The second? Give an account of him. 14. Who was Father Neale? What is said of Mr. Thayer?

CHAPTER XXXVII.

JOHN ADAMS PRESIDENT, 1797-1801—HOSTILITIES WITH FRANCE—
DEATH OF WASHINGTON.

1. Election of President Adams—The third election for the Presidency took place in 1796. The Federalists put forward John Adams, of Massachusetts, and the Republicans Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, and after an angry contest the choice fell upon Adams. Under the Constitution as it then stood, Jefferson, having received the next highest number of electoral votes, became Vice-President. The term of President Adams began March 4, 1797.

2. Quarrel with France.—The principal event of Adams's administration was the quarrel with France. The council, styled the Directory, which then ruled the affairs of the revolutionary republic, violently resented the refusal of the United States to support France in her war with England, seized American ships, insulted and repelled the American ambassadors, and threatened to treat as pirates the unfortunate

American sailors who had been impressed into the British service.

3. President Adams sent Pinckney, Marshall, and Gerry to France to negotiate for a better understanding. Talleyrand, the French Minister of Foreign Affairs, refused to receive them unless they would first pledge a large loan to the government, and pay a secret bribe of \$240,000 to the members of the Directory for their private pockets. He threatened war if they did not comply with these terms. Pinckney replied: "War be it, then! Millions for defence, not one cent for tribute."



JOHN ADAMS.

4. The infamous conduct of the French revolutionists aroused the whole American people.* Washington was recalled from

Mount Vernon and made commander-in-chief; troops were raised; the navy was strengthened, and more than three hundred and fifty vessels were armed as privateers. Hostilities at sea began promptly. A squadron under Commodore Barry, then head of the navy, had the frigate *United States* for flag-ship, and included also the celebrated frigate *Constitution* (known as "Old Ironsides"), Captain Samuel Nicholson. Commodore Truxton in the *Constellation* commanded a second squadron; and there were others under Captain Tingey and Captain Decatur.

5. All the squadrons made numerous prizes, and in various engagements with French men-of-war the American navy

*It was during the excitement of this crisis that Joseph Hopkinson wrote the words of "Hail Columbia," ever since regarded as one of the national songs. The tune was already popular under the name of "The President's March,"

won the highest reputation.* The Directory offered terms, but it was overthrown before negotiations could be opened, and the treaty of peace was made with Napoleon as First Consul, September 30, 1800.

6. Death of Washington.—Washington died at Mount Vernon, December 14, 1799, after only one day's illness. His disease was an affection of the throat. The event was mourned all over the United States with sincere feeling, and was appropriately observed by Congress and other public bodies. Bonaparte ordered the standards of

the French army to be shrouded in crape for ten days, and in England a fleet of sixty British men-of-war lowered their flags to half-mast.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

7. Alien and Sedition Laws.—During the difficulties with France two acts were passed by Congress known as the alien and sedition laws. The first empowered the President to order aliens who were conspiring against the peace of the United States to quit the country, and the second re-

stricted liberty of the press. These laws proved highly unpopular and caused the defeat of Adams in the next election for the Presidency.

8. Fourth Presidential Election.—At the election in 1800

* The first "commander-in-chief" of the navy of the Revolution was Esek or Ezekiel, sometimes called "Admiral," Hopkins. He was dismissed in 1777, and the senior officer during the rest of the war was Commodore James Nicholson, of Maryland, a gallant sailor belonging to a family which has been distinguished in the service to this day. The navy was disbanded after the peace, and a new establishment was organized in 1794. Commodore Barry was at the head of it till his death in 1803, and he was succeeded by Commodore Samuel Nicholson, a brother of Commodore James.

the Republican party triumphed. Of the electoral votes for President, Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, and Aaron Burr of New York, received seventy-three each, and Adams sixty-five. This threw the choice into the House of Representatives, by whom Jefferson was elected President and Burr Vice-President.* In 1800 the national capital was removed from Philadelphia to the new city of Washington on the Potomac.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who were candidates at the third presidential election? Who were chosen?

2. What was the principal event of John Adams's administration? How did the French Directory treat the United States?

3. How were the American commissioners received in Paris?

4. What was the effect of this treatment in the United States? What preparations were made for war?

5. What is said of the naval operations? What was the Directory compelled to do? With whom was the treaty of peace concluded? When?

6. When did Washington die? What marks of respect were paid to his memory?

7. What were the alien and sedition laws? How were they received?

8. What was the result of the elections of 1800? To what place was the national capital removed in 1800?

* The contest between Jefferson and Burr led to the Twelfth Amendment of the Constitution respecting the manner of choosing the President and Vice-President.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THOMAS JEFFERSON PRESIDENT, 1801-1809—PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA—
WAR WITH THE BARBARY STATES—AARON BURR—TROUBLE WITH
ENGLAND AND FRANCE.

1. Acquisition of Louisiana.—By a secret treaty with Spain in 1800 France had recovered the Territory of Louisiana. The free navigation of the Mississippi had always been rightly regarded as essential to the interests of the United States, and, to settle for ever the disputes over this matter, Jefferson privately proposed to Napoleon that France should sell to this country the city of New Orleans. Bonaparte refused, but he offered to sell the whole of Louisiana. The American commissioners took the responsibility of accepting the offer without waiting for instructions, and the price agreed upon was \$15,000,000 (1803).

2. The importance of this transaction was not fully appreciated by the people, and Jefferson was much censured by his political opponents, but it was in fact one of his most brilliant services to the country. The territory acquired was not merely the present State of Louisiana, but a vast region extending from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains and from the Gulf of Mexico to British America, and including about a quarter of the present area of the Union. Its possession assured the future of the United States as the great American power.

3. War with the Barbary States.—The Barbary States, Tunis, Tripoli, Algiers, and Morocco, on the southern shore of the Mediterranean, were in the habit of sending out piratical vessels to prey upon the commerce of other nations. Their outrages having become unbearable, an American squadron was sent to give them a lesson. Commodore Preble, Captain Bainbridge, Lieutenant Stephen Decatur (a son

of the Captain Decatur mentioned in the last chapter), and other gallant officers distinguished themselves in several engagements (1801-1805). The Barbary rulers sued for peace, and the depredations of their corsairs ceased for several years.

4. Jefferson was re-elected President in 1804, with George Clinton for Vice-President. Burr had quarrelled with his party. Resenting especially the opposition of Alexander Hamilton, he challenged that distinguished man to a duel. They fought at Weehawken on the Hudson, opposite New York, July 11, 1804, and Hamilton was killed.

5. **Burr's Conspiracy.**—Burr, who was a man of very bad private character, afterwards went to the South and West to organize an enterprise whose exact purpose has never been discovered. He persuaded a number of military and naval officers to join him, and it is thought that he intended either to invade Mexico or to establish a monarchy west of the Alleghanies. He was arrested and tried for high treason, but acquitted on account of a defect in the evidence (1807). After many misfortunes he died in obscurity.

6. **Trouble with France and England.**—France and England being now at war, the merchant-vessels of the United States and other neutral powers were subjected to the most unjust treatment by both belligerents. A British "Order in Council" forbade neutral vessels to enter a French port without first stopping at a British port and paying a tax ; while Napoleon, by his "Milan decree," confiscated every vessel which complied with the British exactions (1806-7). Congress met these high-handed proceedings by declaring an embargo, forbidding any vessels whatever to leave the ports of the United States. This measure proved so unpopular that it was repealed (1809), and in its stead a non-intercourse act was passed prohibiting trade with France and England.

7. **Other Events.**—Among other important acts of Mr. Jefferson's administration were the passing of an act of Congress forbidding the slave-trade after January 1, 1808, and

the practical application of steam to navigation by Robert Fulton. The first steamboat on the Hudson was built by Fulton in 1807.

8. Jefferson refused a third term, and at the election of 1808 James Madison, of Virginia, the Secretary of State, was chosen President by the Republican, or, as it now began to be called, the Democratic, party. Clinton was re-elected Vice-President. The candidates of the Federalists were C. C. Pinckney and Rufus King.

QUESTIONS.

1. What proposal did Mr. Jefferson make to Napoleon? What was the reply? The result? What was the date of this purchase?
2. What did the United States secure by it?
3. What outrages were committed by the Barbary States? Name some of the American naval officers engaged in chastising them. What was the result of their operations?
4. Who was chosen President in 1804? What is said of Burr and Hamilton?
5. Give an account of Burr's conspiracy. Of his fate.
6. What troubles occurred with England? With France? How did Congress meet these exactions? What was substituted for the unpopular embargo?
7. What action was taken by Congress respecting the slave-trade? What was accomplished by Robert Fulton during this administration?
8. What was the result of the elections of 1808?

CHAPTER XXXIX.

JAMES MADISON, PRESIDENT, 1809-1817—SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

1. The English Quarrel.—President Madison entered office March 4, 1809, in the midst of grave difficulties. The exactions of the French and English continued; the old dispute with England about the right of search (see p. 171) had almost reached open war; and it was believed that British agents were stirring up trouble in the Northwest, where a hostile confederacy of Indian tribes was forming under the Shawnee chief, Tecumseh.

2. Indian War.—General William Henry Harrison, Governor of the Territory of Indiana and Superintendent of Indian Affairs, was sent against the savages before they could take the field, and in the battle of Tippecanoe, Indiana, November 11, 1811, he completely defeated them and broke up their plans. They were soon in arms again, however, as allies of the English.

3. War with England.—The British claim of the right to search American vessels and take off seamen was asserted with so much insolence and violence that on the 19th of June, 1812, the President formally declared war, and preparations were made for the invasion of Canada.

4. The first operations were disastrous. General William Hull, who had been ordered to enter Canada from Detroit, was defeated by a combined British and Indian force under General Brock and Tecumseh, and surrendered not only Detroit but the whole Territory of Michigan (August, 1812). A court-martial sentenced him to be shot for cowardice, but the President pardoned him.

5. At Queenstown Heights, near Niagara, a small American force under Colonel Van Rensselaer stormed the British batteries (October 13), but were afterwards overpowered

because the militia on the American side refused to support them. The British General Brock was killed in this affair.

6. The Navy.—To compensate for these misfortunes on land, the little American navy won imperishable glory on the ocean and became the admiration of the world. The *Constitution*, Captain Hull, captured the British frigate *Guerriere* (*gher-e-are'*) near the Gulf of St. Lawrence, cutting her to pieces in about an hour. Later, under Commodore Bainbridge, the same ship destroyed the British frigate *Java* off the coast of Brazil. Commodore Decatur, with the *United States*, captured the *Macedonian* near the Azores. Captain Porter in the *Essex* took the sloop-of-war *Alert*.

7. Before the end of the year the Americans had taken from the enemy about fifty men-of-war, two hundred and fifty merchant-vessels, and three thousand prisoners. Under the impulse of these victories the Federalists, who had opposed the war, were beaten in the presidential elections, and Madison was chosen for a second term, with Elbridge Gerry for Vice-President.

8. The war on the sea was continued the next year with as much credit as ever to the Americans, although not without some defeats. Captain James Lawrence in the *Chesapeake* had a severe fight with the British frigate *Shannon* near Boston (June 1, 1813). He was mortally wounded in the action, and as he was carried below he exclaimed, "Don't give up the ship!" The *Chesapeake* was captured by boarding, after she had lost a large proportion of her officers and crew.

9. Captain Porter cruised with the frigate *Essex* in the Pacific, where he was the first to show the flag of an American man-of-war. After making many captures and breaking up the British whaling business in those seas, the *Essex* was destroyed by two British ships in the neutral port of Valparaiso (March, 1814).

10. Operations against Canada.—The military operations in the North and West during 1813 were not brilliant.

Proctor and Tecumseh, however, were repulsed at Fort Meigs, in Ohio, and were defeated again at Fort Stevenson, Lower Sandusky, where Lieutenant Croghan, a lad of twenty-one, beat them off with a garrison of one hundred and sixty men and one gun. An attempt by Sir George Prevost upon Sackett's Harbor, New York, was gallantly repulsed by militia under General Brown.

11. Battle of Lake Erie.—It was the navy which won the principal glory of the war on the frontier as well as on the sea. Oliver Hazard Perry, a young master-commandant, by severe exertions had collected ten small vessels on Lake Erie, some of them built for the occasion, others captured in the Niagara River. With this flotilla, ill-equipped and short of men and officers, he met an English squadron under Commodore Barclay near the western end of the lake, September 10, 1813. Barclay had only six vessels, but they were superior to the American.

12. Perry's flag-ship was named the *Lawrence*, and his flag displayed the dying words of the gallant captain of the *Chesapeake*, "Don't give up the ship." Becoming the target of the heaviest fire of the enemy, the *Lawrence* was entirely disabled, whereupon Perry took an open boat and pulled through the thick of the battle to the *Niagara*. With this brig he sailed into the British line at a critical moment, pouring in his broadsides right and left, then turning and continuing a deadly discharge at short range. In fifteen minutes the British surrendered, and Perry sent a messenger to General Harrison with the despatch: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

13. This victory, giving the Americans command of the lake, forced the British to evacuate Detroit, and enabled General Harrison to follow them into Canada, where, at the battle of Moravian Town, October 5, Proctor's command surrendered, Tecumseh was killed, and the Indians fled. Michigan was then recovered by the United States, and the war in the Northwest came to an end.

14. War with the Creeks.—The Creek Indians of the Southwest, roused by Tecumseh, massacred nearly four hundred settlers on the Alabama River (August, 1813). General Andrew Jackson led a force of volunteers into their country, and inflicted upon them a series of crushing defeats, ending with the battle of March 27, 1814, at the Horseshoe Bend of the Tallapoosa, where six hundred warriors were slain.

QUESTIONS.

1. Under what difficulties did President Madison enter office? What Indian enemies were giving trouble in the West?

2. Who was charged with the campaign against the Indians? Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe.

3. What was the principal cause of the declaration of war against England in 1812?

4. What is said of the first military operations? Give an account of General Hull's defeat.

5. What occurred at Queenstown Heights?

6. Where did the Americans find compensation for their failures on land? Give an account of some of the naval exploits.

7. What was the effect of the naval victories in the presidential elections?

8. Describe the fight of the *Chesapeake* and *Shannon*.

9. Give an account of the cruise of the *Essex*.

10. What occurred at Fort Meigs? At Sackett's Harbor?

11. What armament was fitted out by Perry on Lake Erie? What British force did he encounter? The date?

12. Describe the battle of Lake Erie.

13. What were the consequences of Perry's victory?

14. What happened among the Creek Indians? Who commanded the forces sent against them? What did he accomplish?

CHAPTER XL.

WAR ON THE NIAGARA FRONTIER—LUNDY'S LANE—BATTLE OF PLATTSBURG—CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON—BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS—END OF THE WAR.

1. On the Niagara Frontier.—An expedition against Montreal, under command of General Wilkinson, having come to nothing, General Brown, the militia officer who had distinguished himself at Sackett's Harbor, and had been rewarded by a commission in the regular army, obtained leave to attempt a new invasion of Canada. He captured Fort Erie, opposite Buffalo, July 3, 1814, and two days later defeated the British in a severe battle at Chippewa, near Niagara Falls.

2. Battle of Lundy's Lane.—On the 25th the British, under General Drummond, with a greatly superior force, came upon Brown at Lundy's Lane, near the falls. The battle began at sunset, with a gallant attack by the Americans under Brigadier-General Winfield Scott, and it lasted until midnight, without important advantage to either side, though the Americans were left in possession of the field. Brown and Scott were both wounded.

3. The Americans having retired to Fort Erie, Drummond unsuccessfully besieged them there during more than a month, losing a thousand men in a night assault in August, and having his works destroyed and four hundred prisoners captured by a sortie of Brown's in September. The Americans finally blew up the fort and recrossed to the New York side.

4. Invasion of New York.—The war between France and England being now over, a large number of veteran British troops were sent to America, and General Prevost organized an invasion by way of Lake Champlain. He had an army

of fourteen thousand men, aided by a fleet under Captain Downie. To meet him the Americans could muster only fifteen hundred troops, and a squadron of small vessels decidedly inferior to the British.

5. Battle of Plattsburg.—General Macomb, with the American troops, formed his line of defence behind the Saranac River, which enters Lake Champlain at Plattsburg, and Commodore Macdonough ranged his squadron at the entrance to Plattsburg Bay. The British attacked by land and water at the same time, September 11, 1814, and a severe engagement followed, at the end of which Macdonough had taken all the enemy's vessels except a few small galleys; and Prevost, beaten at every point by Macomb, retreated in disorder to Canada.

6. Capture of Washington.—But while affairs were thus prosperous at the North, a great disaster had taken place at the capital. A British fleet under Admiral Cochrane landed five thousand troops under General Ross on the Patuxent River, about fifty miles from Washington, and, while the army marched thence towards the national capital, a part of the fleet ascended the Potomac.

7. A faint attempt of the American militia to make a stand at Bladensburg, six miles from Washington (August 24, 1814), hardly checked the advance. Ross entered the city without further opposition, Mr. Madison and other officers of the government taking flight. The Capitol, the President's house, the Library of Congress, and the buildings of the State, Treasury, and War Departments were burned.

8. Defence of Baltimore.—After this barbarous destruction the invaders sailed for Baltimore. Ross and his troops landed at North Point, fourteen miles from the city, and the fleet bombarded Fort McHenry, which commanded the entrance to the harbor. But Ross was killed in a skirmish, the attack upon the fort failed, and on the night of the 13th of September the assailants retired.*

* It was during the bombardment of Fort McHenry that Francis Scott Key, an American gentleman detained on board one of the British ships, to which he had gone to ask the release of a friend, wrote the words of "The Star-Spangled Banner."

9. Battle of New Orleans.—A much more formidable expedition was despatched by the British against New Orleans. It was led by Sir Edward Pakenham, a distinguished general of Wellington's campaigns, and comprised twelve thousand veteran troops, with a fleet mustering four thousand sailors and marines. To oppose this force General Andrew Jackson, who commanded in the South, had only one thousand regulars and four thousand militia.

10. Jackson had constructed a line of entrenchments four miles below the city, extending from the Mississippi on one side to an impassable swamp on the other. At first his defences were breastworks built of cotton-bales, but as the British artillery set the cotton on fire, it was all removed and a ditch and earthworks were constructed. The only approach for the British was by a neck of land hardly a mile wide and entirely exposed to the American batteries.

11. Pakenham tried a cannonade in vain. On the 8th of January, 1815, he ordered an assault. His troops moved forward in excellent order, in spite of the murderous fire of the American artillery; but when they came within range of the Tennessee riflemen the slaughter was so terrible that they broke and fled. Pakenham was killed; Gibbs, one of his subordinate generals, was mortally wounded; and the British retired to their ships. Their loss in the battle was about two thousand, while that of the Americans was only thirteen. This was the last land battle of the war. Indeed, a peace had already been concluded at Ghent, but the news had not yet reached America.

12. Peace.—Both sides had for some time desired peace, and in America there was a considerable party, especially in New England, with whom the war had always been unpopular. In December, 1814, a convention of the peace party of New England met at Hartford to consider the grievances of the people. The Hartford convention was often denounced as treasonable, but there was not sufficient ground for such a charge.

13. The negotiations for peace took place at Ghent, in Belgium, and the treaty, having been signed December 24, 1814, was promptly ratified by both governments. Nothing was said in it about the right of search and impressment of seamen, out of which the war arose; but as the British silently dropped their claim, the United States must be said to have succeeded in the object of the contest.

QUESTIONS.

1. Give an account of Brown's invasion of Canada.
2. Of the battle of Lundy's Lane.
3. Of the siege of Fort Erie.
4. What did Prevost undertake?
5. Describe the battle of Plattsburg. Who were the commanders on each side?
6. Give an account of the British movement against Washington. Who were the leaders?
7. What defence was made? What did the British do after occupying the city?
8. What was their next movement? The result at Baltimore.
9. Give an account of the expedition against New Orleans. The forces on each side. The commanders.
10. Describe the defences.
11. The battle.
12. What was the Hartford convention?
13. Give an account of the peace. What did the United States gain?

CHAPTER XLI.

THE BARBARY PIRATES—JAMES MONROE PRESIDENT, 1817-1821—
PURCHASE OF FLORIDA—SLAVERY—THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE—
THE MONROE DOCTRINE—INDIAN MISSIONS.

1. War with Algiers.—The piracies of the Algerines had been renewed during the war with England, and as soon as peace was concluded Commodore Decatur was sent to the Mediterranean with a fleet of nine vessels (May, 1815) to deal with the affair decisively. He captured the best ship in the Algerine navy, and when he appeared off Algiers the terrified dey was ready to submit to any demands. After compelling this ruler to come on board the flag-ship, sign a treaty, pay damages, and release all his captives, Decatur exacted certain indemnities from Tunis and Tripoli, and the piracies of the Barbary Powers were stopped for ever.

2. James Monroe President.—At the elections of 1816 the Democratic or Anti-Federalist party was again successful, and James Monroe, of Virginia, Madison's Secretary of State, was chosen President. He was re-elected in 1820, when he received all the electoral votes but one.



JAMES MONROE.

3. Florida.—Hostilities broke out with the Seminole and Creek Indians of Spanish Florida, Georgia, and Alabama in

1817, and General Jackson, being sent to the scene of disturbance, chastised the savages and destroyed their villages.

4. Satisfied that the Spaniards had incited the Indians to make war, Jackson invaded Florida (April, 1818), captured St. Mark's, and hanged two British subjects who were convicted by a court-martial of stirring up the Indians and supplying them with arms. Then he seized Pensacola and sent the Spanish troops and civil authorities to Havana.

5. Spain vigorously protested against these proceedings as a gross violation of neutrality, but they were defended by the government on the plea that they were necessary for the protection of the States. The matter was finally arranged by the purchase of Florida by the United States for \$5,000,000 in 1819.

6. **Slavery Agitation.**—The question of slavery began to give serious trouble during Mr. Monroe's administration. In the Northern States the use of slave labor had nearly died out, while in the South, on the other hand, it had rapidly increased in consequence of the great development of the cotton industry.

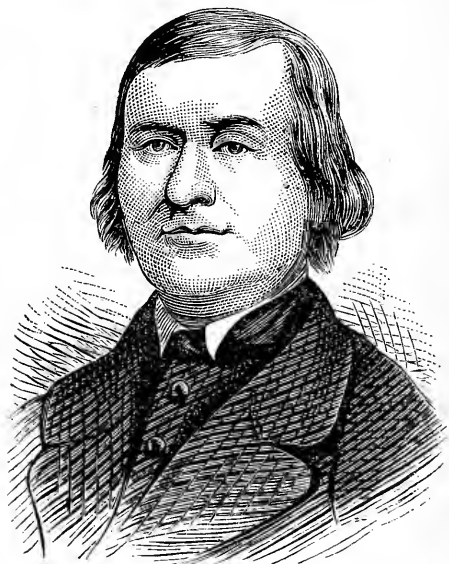
7. In the Northwest Territory slavery was prohibited by law; in all territories south of that domain it was permitted. There soon grew up a contest between the free and the slave States for the control of the government, the South wishing to extend the area of slavery by the admission of new slave States; the North seeking to confine the institution to the localities where it already existed; while the abolitionists of the North desired to put a stop to it altogether. Hence began the "irrepressible conflict" between free and slave labor which ended, after more than forty years, in the great civil war.

8. **The Missouri Compromise.**—In the session of Congress of 1818-19 the controversy became exciting when it was proposed to admit Missouri as a State. The House of Representatives voted by a small majority to prohibit slavery in the new State; the Senate would not consent. At the

next session the conflict was renewed with the same result. At last a compromise was made (1820) by which Missouri was admitted as a slave State, but it was agreed that slavery should not be tolerated in future north of latitude $36^{\circ} 30'$, which was the southern boundary of Missouri. This law, known as the Missouri Compromise, quelled for a time an agitation which threatened to break up the Union.

9. The Monroe Doctrine.—Mexico and the Spanish colonies of South America had revolted against Spain and established republics, and in 1822 President Monroe acknowledged them as independent nations. The next year Mr. Monroe declared in his annual message that “the American continents are not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power.” This principle afterwards became famous as the “Monroe Doctrine.”

10. Indian Missions.—It was during the administration of Mr. Madison that the Catholic missions among the Indians west of the Mississippi, neglected after the dispersion of the French Jesuits, entered upon a new course of prosperity. Bishop Dubourg, soon after his appointment to the see of New Orleans in 1815, exerted himself to obtain missionaries for the Western tribes, and from the labors thus begun date the fruitful enterprises which the Church has since prosecuted among these Indians.



FATHER DE SMET.

11. In 1824 a number of Jesuits were secured. They opened a school for Indian boys at Florissant, near the junction of the Missouri and Mississippi rivers, where the

Ladies of the Sacred Heart had already a school for Indian girls. The missions on the Missouri were confided to the Jesuits, and those on the Mississippi to the Lazarists.

12. Among the Jesuits at Florissant was Father Peter John De Smet, one of several young Belgians who came to the United States under the care of the Rev. Charles Nerinckx, one of the first priests in Kentucky. Father De Smet devoted the whole of his long life to the Indian missions, earning the title of the Apostle of the Rocky Mountains, and recalling by his extraordinary career the heroic days of Jogues and Brebeuf. He died in 1872.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the object of Decatur's expedition to the Mediterranean? What did he accomplish?
2. Who was elected President in 1816? Was he re-elected?
- 3, 4. Give an account of General Jackson's proceedings in Florida.
5. How was the difficulty with Spain arranged?
6. What is said of slavery at the North? At the South?
7. What did the Southern States wish? The Northern States?
8. What was the controversy about Missouri? The Missouri Compromise?
9. Explain the Monroe Doctrine.
- 10, 11. What did Bishop Dubourg do for the Indians?
12. Give an account of Father De Smet.

CHAPTER XLII.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, 1825-1829—ANDREW JACKSON, 1829-1837—THE UNITED STATES BANK—NULLIFICATION—INDIAN WARS—RAILROADS—MARTIN VAN BUREN, 1837-1841—WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, 1841.

1. John Quincy Adams.—At the election of 1824 there were four candidates for the Presidency, none of whom had a majority of the votes. John Quincy Adams was thereupon chosen by the House of Representatives. He was a son of President John Adams, and belonged to the same political school as Monroe. His administration was quiet, prosperous, and economical.

2. On the 4th of July, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence, John Adams died at Quincy, Massachusetts, and Thomas Jefferson at Monticello, Virginia. They expired nearly at the same hour.

3. Andrew Jackson.—Party feeling was very bitter at the election of 1828. Andrew Jackson, who had been Mr. Adams's principal competitor in 1824, was chosen President. He was a man of great energy and boldness, and his administration, which lasted eight years, was full of strife.

4. The United States Bank.—A national United States Bank had been established by Alexander Hamilton, and the public money was deposited in it. Jackson was bitterly opposed to this institution, but the majority of Congress were in favor of it. Against the President's recommendation they passed a bill to renew its charter, which was about to expire, and they also refused to remove the public money from the bank. Jackson vetoed the charter, and ordered the removal of the deposits on his own authority (1833)—a measure which was followed by a good deal of commercial distress and intense political excitement. In this quarrel the business classes generally took the side of the bank and

became known as Whigs, while the partisans of the President kept the old name of Democrats.

5. Nullification.—A still more serious controversy arose at the South. Since 1820 the government had followed the policy of a protective tariff, intended to encourage manufacturing interests at home by laying a heavy duty upon foreign imported goods. This plan was popular at the North, where there were many mills and factories, but not at the South, where industry was almost entirely agricultural.

6. A law having been passed in 1832 increasing certain duties, a State convention in South Carolina declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and resolved to resist the attempt to collect duties by force of arms. Preparations were also made to take South Carolina out of the Union. Thus was asserted the doctrine of the right of secession which led to the civil war nearly thirty years later.

7. The leader of the "nullification party," so-called because it insisted that a State could nullify, or annul, an act of Congress, was John C. Calhoun, who had resigned the Vice-Presidency and been elected senator from South Carolina. The most distinguished champion of the opposite theory was Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, who, in a famous debate with Senator Hayne, of South Carolina, lasting for several days, presented the constitutional arguments against secession and nullification with an eloquence and force never equalled in any discussion of that question.

8. President Jackson acted with characteristic vigor. He ordered troops and a ship-of-war to Charleston, and privately assured the leaders of the nullification party that if they committed any overt act of rebellion he would hang them. Meanwhile, however, Mr. Clay, the chief champion of the protective system, introduced a compromise measure for the reduction of the tariff by slow degrees, and with the passing of this bill (1833) the South Carolina party was satisfied.

9. Indian Troubles.—An Indian war in what is now Wisconsin was closed by the capture of Black Hawk, chief of

the Sacs and Foxes, and the removal of the tribes beyond the Mississippi. In this campaign Abraham Lincoln served as a captain of volunteers, and Jefferson Davis as a lieutenant of regulars. The removal of the Seminoles and Creeks of Florida was not accomplished without a more serious war, lasting from 1835 to 1842. The savages, under their chief, Osceola, took refuge in the trackless swamps, and were only dislodged at the cost of many lives. Osceola was captured, and died in imprisonment.

10. Railroads.—The railroad system, to which the country owes its rapid development, was begun during Jackson's administration, the first steam locomotive in this country being run on the track of the Delaware and Hudson Canal Company in Pennsylvania, in 1829.

11. Martin Van Buren President.—The Democrats elected Martin Van Buren, of New York, President in 1836. The country was not prosperous during his term of office (1837–1841), and although he carried out some excellent measures, and settled a threatening dispute with Great Britain about the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick, he was defeated as a candidate for re-election, the Whigs choosing General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, known as “the hero of Tippecanoe” (see page 187). General Harrison lived only one month after his inauguration. The office then devolved upon the Vice-President, John Tyler, of Virginia (1841).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of the election of 1824?
2. What happened on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence?
3. Who was the next President? How long was he in office?
4. Who founded the United States Bank? What was Jackson's course towards it?
5. What was the policy of protection? How was it regarded North and South?
6. What was done in South Carolina?

7. Why was the nullification party so named? Who was its leader? Who was the principal champion of the other side?

8. What was the President's course? What compromise was adopted? Who was its author?

9. What is said of the Indian war in the West? In Florida?

10. When was the first steam railroad in this country operated?

11. Who succeeded Jackson in the Presidency? What did he accomplish? Who was next chosen? By what party? How long was he in office? Who succeeded him?

CHAPTER XLIII.

JOHN TYLER PRESIDENT, 1841-1845—NATIVE AMERICAN RIOTS—TEXAS—ANNEXATION.

1. Mr. Tyler and the Whigs.—Mr. Tyler soon quarrelled with the Whig party which elected him, one of the earliest causes of dissension being the old United States Bank, which the Whigs wished to re-establish. They enacted a new charter, but the President vetoed it.

2. An affair known as "Dorr's Rebellion" occurred in 1842 in Rhode Island, where a party led by Thomas Dorr wished to exchange the old constitution for a new one giving more power to the people. Dorr assumed to be governor by the votes of his partisans; the lawful governor appealed to the President for assistance, and Mr. Tyler sent troops to uphold him. Dorr was convicted of treason and sentenced to imprisonment for life, but he was soon pardoned.

3. Native American Riots.—In 1844 the "Native American" party, organized for the purpose of excluding Catholics from politics, provoked a dreadful riot in Philadelphia, which lasted three days. Two of the Catholic churches, a house of the Sisters of Charity, the valuable library of the Augustinian Fathers, and a number of private dwellings occupied by Irish Catholics were destroyed and many persons were killed. A similar riot in New York was prevented mainly by the courage and prudence of Bishop Hughes.

4. The Telegraph.—The first electric telegraph line in the United States was erected in 1844 by Samuel F. B. Morse. Professor Morse made this important invention as early as 1832. He had great difficulty in persuading people that his idea was practicable, and in raising money to carry it out. At length, on the very last night of the session, Congress was induced to appropriate \$30,000 for building an experimental line between Baltimore and Washington.

5. Texas.—What is now the State of Texas was originally part of Mexico. The people, many of whom were colonists from the United States, declared their independence in 1835, and, after some fighting, established a republic with General Houston as President. A majority of them wished for annexation to the United States, and the project was generally favored in the South. In the North, on the contrary, it met with much opposition, partly because it involved war with Mexico, and partly because it meant the establishment of more slave States.

6. A proposal for annexation which had once been defeated was revived by Mr. Tyler in 1844. The Senate rejected a treaty of annexation; but the elections having resulted in the success of the Democratic party, which favored the scheme, a resolution declaring Texas part of the United States passed Congress March 1, 1845, and was signed by Mr. Tyler three days before he went out of office.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of Tyler and his party?
2. What was Dorr's Rebellion?
3. Give the story of the Native American riots.
4. Of the first electric telegraph line.
5. What was the early history of Texas? What is said of annexation? Why was it opposed at the North?
6. What did the President do about it? How was the question affected by the elections of 1844? What was the result?

CHAPTER XLIV.

CAMPAIGN OF TAYLOR—CAPTURE OF CALIFORNIA—CAMPAIGN OF SCOTT—FALL OF MEXICO—THE TREATY OF PEACE.

1. The Mexican War.—The new President, James K. Polk, of Tennessee, was in full sympathy with Mr. Tyler's plan of annexation. He promptly ordered General Zachary Taylor to Texas, with about fifteen hundred men as an army of occupation, and instructed him to take a position between the Nueces (*nway'-ces*) River and the Rio Grande (*re'-o gran'-day*)—a disputed district which Mexico insisted had never belonged to Texas. This made war inevitable. As soon as the first skirmish was reported the President declared in a special message to Congress, May 11, 1846, that "war existed by the act of Mexico," and Congress appropriated \$10,000,000 and authorized the raising of fifty thousand volunteers.

2. The first pitched battle took place near the Rio Grande at Palo Alto, where, in an engagement of five hours, Taylor with two thousand men defeated General Arista with six thousand, May 8, 1846. The next day the armies met again at Resaca de la Palma (*ray-sah'-ca day la pahl'-ma*), where the Mexicans were routed with great loss. In this battle Captain May and his dragoons dashed at a battery which was doing the Americans much damage, rode over the guns, and carried off the Mexican General La Vega (*vay'-ga*).

3. Taylor now crossed the Rio Grande, and as soon as he had been reinforced, pushed into the interior with six thousand men. The city of Monterey (*mon-tay-ray'*), with nine thousand Mexicans under General Ampudia (*am-poo'-de-a*), surrendered after a three days' battle (September 24). Tampico, a port on the Gulf of Mexico, was taken by an American squadron under Commodore Conner.

4. Conquest of California.—In the meantime California,

which was then the northern province of Mexico, had been conquered by a handful of Americans. Before the war began Captain John C. Frémont had been employed for several years in exploring the almost unknown country beyond the Rocky Mountains, with a view especially to the discovery of the best overland route to the Pacific Ocean. He was engaged on the third of his great expeditions when rumors of impending war with Mexico reached him.

5. Joining himself and his sixty men to a small body of American settlers on the Sacramento River, who proposed to organize themselves as an independent State, he easily repulsed the Mexicans, and held his own until war had been declared and an American squadron had occupied San Francisco harbor and Monterey. Then the independent State was abandoned, and the explorers and colonists placed themselves under the orders of Commodore Stockton.

6. With about three hundred soldiers, sailors, and volunteers Stockton captured Los Angeles (*ahn'-ge-les*), the capital of the province ; California was then proclaimed a Territory of the United States, and Frémont was appointed governor. There was some fighting, but two victories in January, 1847, decided the contest in favor of the Americans.

7. **Kearny and Doniphan.**—A force called the Army of the West, under General Stephen W. Kearny, had been despatched from Fort Leavenworth in June, 1846, to invade California. They marched across the plains and occupied Santa Fé (*sahn'-ta fay*), New Mexico. Thence, finding that Frémont had forestalled him, Kearny pushed on to the Pacific with only one hundred men, leaving Colonel Doniphan with a thousand volunteers to chastise the Navajo (*na-vah'-ho*) Indians.

8. After performing this duty Doniphan started for the army in Mexico. He defeated superior forces of the enemy at Bracito (*bra-the'-to*) and Chihuahua (*che-wah'-wah*), and in May, 1847, reached General Wool at Saltillo, after a march which is considered one of the remarkable exploits of the war.

9. Battle of Buena Vista.—Taylor had been obliged to send most of his choicest troops to General Scott, and while he was thus weakened he was attacked by the Mexican president and commander-in-chief, General Santa Anna, at Buena Vista (*bway'-nah vees'-tah*), near Saltillo (*sal-teel'-yo*). The Americans were outnumbered four to one, but Santa Anna was routed after a terrible battle of ten hours (February 23, 1847). Among the officers who distinguished themselves under Taylor were Wool, May, Jefferson Davis, and Braxton Bragg.

10. Scott's Campaign.—General Winfield Scott, who was commander-in-chief of the United States army, led in person the forces destined for the reduction of the city of Mexico. In March, 1847, he arrived off Vera Cruz, a strongly fortified city on the Gulf of Mexico. The defences were bombarded both by land batteries and the ships of Commodore Conner, and after four days' fire the place surrendered (March 26) with five thousand prisoners and five hundred guns.

11. Marching at once towards the capital, Scott defeated Santa Anna at the mountain-pass of Cerro Gordo (April 18), rested three months among the hills to enable his men to recover from the effects of the climate, and in August appeared before the city of Mexico with ten thousand men, less than one-third of the number of the Mexican garrison.

12. Capture of the City of Mexico.—On the 20th the Americans won three important victories, carrying the fortified camp of Contreras, the castle of San Antonio, and the heights of Churubusco. On the 8th of September they took a strongly fortified building called El Molino del Rey (*mo-lee'-no del ray*), or "The King's Mill." On the 13th the heights of Chapultepec were stormed amid great slaughter, and possession was secured of two of the gates of the city. The next morning Scott and his victorious army entered the capital in triumph.

13. This was practically the end of the war. By the treaty of peace signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwah-dah-loo'-*

pay he-dal'-go), March 2, 1848, the Rio Grande was recognized as the western boundary of Texas, and Mexico sold to the United States for \$18,500,000 the provinces of Upper California and New Mexico. This important acquisition comprised not only the present California and New Mexico, but also Nevada, Utah, most of Arizona, and part of Colorado. The southern part of New Mexico was purchased from Mexico a few years later.

QUESTIONS.

1. Whom did President Polk send to the frontier? What were his orders?
2. Where was the first pitched battle fought? With what result? What happened the next day?
3. What was Taylor's next movement? What occurred at Monterey?
4. What was Frémont doing at this time in California?
5. Describe his operations.
6. What was done in Southern California? The result?
7. What was Kearny's expedition?
8. Doniphan's expedition?
9. Give an account of the battle of Buena Vista.
10. What general commanded the expedition against the city of Mexico? What was his first operation?
11. Give an account of his march.
12. What battles were fought in front of the city? When was it captured?
13. What did the United States acquire by the treaty of peace?

CHAPTER XLV.

CALIFORNIA AND NEW MEXICO—THE MISSIONS—DISCOVERY OF GOLD.

1. California Missions.—The peninsula of Lower California, which was retained by Mexico, had long been occupied by the Spaniards, and became as early as 1642 the seat of one of the greatest of the Jesuit missionary enterprises. Upper California, the portion sold to the United States, had few white inhabitants, and for many years was only visited by the priests occasionally. In 1769, however, the Franciscans, who had succeeded the Jesuits, founded the mission of San Diego, and this was soon followed by others. The leader of the good friars was Father Juniper Serra, who had the rank of prefect-apostolic.

2. The California missions were managed on a peculiar plan. The priests went in small companies, attended by a few soldiers, and planted a colony of Indian converts well supplied with herds and cattle and farming tools. The Indians made excellent herdsmen; the missions prospered; the wild tribes were attracted to them; and thus large communities of converts were gradually built up. White settlers were not encouraged to join them. The missionaries had entire control of the settlements.

3. Under this plan, in spite of occasional savage outbreaks, the work of converting and civilizing the Indians went on with extraordinary success. The natives became orderly and industrious; they were expert farmers, masons, mechanics, and weavers. The great mission of San Luis contained as many as 3,500 Indian Christians, who owned 60,000 head of cattle and raised every year 13,000 bushels of grain.

4. At one time the missions numbered 30,000 Indians, 424,000 head of cattle, 62,000 horses, and 320,000 sheep.

But on the establishment of the Mexican Republic the system which had produced such rich fruit was violently broken up. The Mexican civil authorities began in 1824 to expel the missionaries and seize the mission property, and soon afterwards a decree was passed by the Mexican Congress to "secularize" all these Indian colonies. Under the operation of this law the lands, buildings, cattle, etc., were confiscated, the converts were scattered, and at least one of the fathers died of starvation.

5. In five years the number of mission Indians was reduced from 30,000 to 4,000. The others, separated from religious influences, soon lost what civilization they had acquired, and fell into a state of degradation from which very few of them were ever rescued.

6. When Upper California became a territory of the United States there were only some weak and scattered remains of the once powerful missions. One of the Franciscans, Father Francis Garcia Diego y Moreno, had been consecrated bishop of both Californias in 1840, but he died in 1846, and his place had not been filled.

7. **Missions of New Mexico.**—The Spanish missionaries were at work in New Mexico three hundred years before that region was acquired by the United States (see page 26), and they were so successful that in 1626 they had twenty-seven stations, with large churches and thousands of converts. A great many of the Pueblo Indians became Christians. A rising of the savages in 1680 obliterated the missions along with the Spanish power; but the priests returned, and, although they afterwards suffered other disasters, the Church which they planted was never entirely overturned. In Arizona also there had been Catholic missionaries from a very early period.

8. **Discovery of Gold.**—When California was sold to the United States it was not supposed to be of extraordinary value; but before the treaty with Mexico was signed gold was discovered (February, 1848) on the American fork of

the Sacramento River, and soon afterwards in many other places near there. When the news reached the States an immense crowd of gold-hunters rushed to California, some going by ship around Cape Horn, some crossing the Isthmus of Panama, and others travelling by wagon-trains across the plains and mountains. In the course of the year 1849 nearly one hundred thousand immigrants entered California, and the whole character of the settlements was suddenly changed. Immense fortunes were made by digging for gold or groping in the streams and washing gold from the sands. Great numbers of the adventurers, however, found nothing; there was much suffering; crimes and disorders of all sorts became common; and the gold-diggings were the resort of the most desperate characters.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of the Spanish missions in California? What mission did the Franciscans found in the present State? Who was their chief?
2. How were the missions managed?
3. What was the result of this plan?
4. How were the missions broken up?
5. What was the consequence?
6. Who was consecrated bishop of the Californias?
7. How long had the missionaries been at work in New Mexico? What happened in 1680?
8. What important discovery was made in California in 1848? What followed?

CHAPTER XLVI.

PRESIDENTS TAYLOR, FILLMORE, AND PIERCE, 1849-1857—THE KNOW-NOTHINGS—REORGANIZATION OF PARTIES—THE MORMONS—THE ATLANTIC TELEGRAPH.

1. Oregon—Immigration.—Among the important events of Mr. Polk's administration were the settlement by compromise of a dispute with Great Britain about the boundary between Oregon and the British possessions, and the beginning of the great movement of emigration from Europe to the United States. The number of arrivals annually had been slowly increasing up to 1844; but in 1845 it rose suddenly to 114,000, and in 1850 it exceeded 310,000. More than half these new settlers were Irish. One cause of the great increase of immigration between 1845 and 1854 was the Irish famine, and another was the political disturbance in Europe.

2. Taylor and Fillmore.

—Mr. Polk was succeeded in the Presidency (1849) by General Zachary Taylor, elected by the Whigs over Lewis Cass, Democrat, and ex-President Van Buren, candidate of the Free-Soil party, who believed that slavery ought to be forbid-



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

den in the Territories. General Taylor died July 9, 1850, and the vacant office fell to Vice-President Fillmore.

3. Pierce.—President Fillmore's term was principally oc-

cupied with the discussion of the slavery question, and that was the chief issue in the election of 1852, when Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, a Democrat and representative of Southern ideas, was chosen over General Scott, Whig, and John P. Hale, Free-Soiler.

4. The Know-Nothing Movement.—A fanatical excitement against the Catholics began to disturb the country in 1853. Tumults were aroused in New York; preachers declaimed in the streets against "Popery"; but the Catholics, by the advice of Archbishop Hughes, kept away from public meetings, and order was easily restored by the militia.

5. Archbishop Bedini, Papal Nuncio to Brazil, was visiting the United States at this time, and the rage of the fanatics against him knew no bounds. At Cincinnati a German newspaper openly urged the radicals to murder him. The next night, which was Christmas (1853), a mob of Germans marched with arms to attack the house in which the nuncio was lodged; the police resisted them; a fight occurred, and eighteen persons were killed.

6. In the course of 1854 mobs destroyed Catholic churches at Manchester and Dorchester, New Hampshire; at Bath, Maine, and at Newark, New Jersey. The Jesuit Father Bapst was tarred and feathered and ridden on a rail at Ellsworth, Maine. A church in Williamsburg, New York, was attacked, and only saved from destruction by the arrival of the military.

7. These outrages were promoted by secret societies, commonly called "Know-Nothing" associations. They made a political question of hostility to the Catholics, and in 1854 they carried the elections in a great many of the Northern States. In June, 1855, they held a National Convention at Philadelphia, and published a declaration of political principles, in which they avowed their determined opposition to the Roman Catholic Church, and their resolve that none but native Americans should hold office.

8. In August, 1855, there was a terrible riot in Louisville,

where the Know-Nothings burned or pillaged about twenty houses, killed a large number of Irish and German Catholics, and were with difficulty prevented from destroying the cathedral.

9. Reorganization of Parties.—The Know-Nothing, or American, party soon went to pieces; the Whigs likewise disappeared; and the new Republican party, pledged to resist the extension of slavery, entered the campaign of 1856 with John C. Frémont as its candidate for President. There was an exciting contest, which ended in the success of the Democratic nominee, James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania.

10. The Mormon Rebellion.—Soon after Mr. Buchanan's inauguration the Mormons of Utah were found to be in rebellion against the United States. This fanatical sect was founded in Western New York in 1830 by an impostor named Joseph Smith, who pretended to have received from an angel a revelation written in an unknown tongue on golden plates. He published, under the title of *The Book of Mormon*, what he called a translation from these imaginary plates, and set himself up as the prophet of a new religion, in which "the saints" were to have as many wives as they pleased.

11. Going West with a number of followers, he was murdered by a mob in Illinois in 1844. "The Latter-Day Saints," as they styled themselves, had grown strong and prosperous, and Smith's successor, Brigham Young, determined to lead them into what is now Utah, and found an independent State. The removal took place in 1847, and they built Salt Lake City, on the great body of water from which the place takes its name.

12. They called their State Deseret, and made Brigham Young governor. Utah was part of the territory purchased by the United States from Mexico, but the Mormons refused to recognize the United States authorities or obey the United States laws. They committed many murders, and in 1857 they massacred at a place called the Mountain Meadow a

whole company of one hundred and twenty men, women, and children who were passing through Utah on the way to California.

13. Mr. Buchanan was unable to reduce them to obedience until he sent an army of twenty-five hundred men against them. Brigham Young threatened war and raised troops, but submitted at the last moment. The Mormons, however, have never become good citizens, and continue to defy the laws against polygamy.

14. The Atlantic Cable.—The first telegraph cable between Europe and America was laid in 1858, and congratulations between Queen Victoria and President Buchanan were the first messages that passed through it. The cable, however, was soon interrupted; and it was not until eight years later that the persevering efforts of the originator of the project, Mr. Cyrus Field, of New York, were rewarded with permanent success.

QUESTIONS.

1. What dispute with England did Mr. Polk settle? When did immigration begin to be rapid?
2. Who succeeded Mr. Polk? Who followed President Taylor, and when?
3. Who was the next President?
4. What disturbance arose in 1853?
- 5, 6. Mention some of the mob outrages.
7. What faction promoted these acts of violence? What was their declared purpose?
8. What occurred in Louisville?
9. What is said of the next presidential election?
10. Who was the founder of the Mormons? What did he pretend?
11. What became of him? Who was his successor?
12. What did the Mormons do in Utah?
13. How were they subdued?
14. When was the first Atlantic telegraph cable laid?

CHAPTER XLVII.

THE SLAVERY AGITATION INCREASING—THE COMPROMISE OF 1850—
THE FUGITIVE SLAVE LAW—THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA BILL—
REPEAL OF THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE—WAR IN KANSAS—DRED
SCOTT—JOHN BROWN—ELECTION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

1. The Slavery Question.—After the annexation of Texas the dissensions over the subject of slavery became more bitter than ever, and the question assumed an overpowering influence in all political movements. So long as the balance could be kept even between North and South by admitting free and slave States alternately, there was comparative peace ; but with the admission of Texas the area out of which slave States would naturally be formed was exhausted, while an indefinite number of free States was sure to be organized in the West and Northwest.

2. When California applied for admission as a free State (1850) the South made violent opposition ; the debates on both sides were conducted with extreme bitterness ; and the more violent Southerners even took some steps towards secession.

3. Henry Clay's Compromise.—The difficulty was evaded for a short time by a compromise measure proposed by Henry Clay (1850). Its principal points were the admission of California as a free State, the abolition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia, and the adoption of a Fugitive Slave Law under which slaves who escaped to the free States might be arrested and sent back to their masters.

4. This Fugitive Slave Law, faithfully enforced by President Fillmore, proved especially hateful to the North. It was often evaded and sometimes openly resisted, it led to mob violence, and it strengthened the anti-slavery party ; while the agitation of the question of the morality and wisdom of slavery was hotly resented at the South,

5. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill.—Peace under Mr. Clay's compromise lasted less than four years. It was broken in January, 1854, by the introduction by Senator Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, of a bill to repeal the Missouri Compromise (see page 196), which provided that there should be no slavery north of latitude $36^{\circ} 30'$, and to create the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska (both north of that line), with or without slavery as the inhabitants might prefer. This principle was called "popular sovereignty" or "squatter sovereignty."

6. The bill was vehemently opposed by the anti-slavery party, and by many others at the North, who regarded the Missouri Compromise as a solemn and binding agreement. It passed, however, in May, amidst angry excitement.

7. Civil War in Kansas.—As the question of slavery was to be decided by the votes of the people of the new Territories, both parties exerted themselves to send out emigrants. Kansas was the scene of the struggle. Elections were carried by wholesale fraud or prevented by force; rival legislatures were dispersed by armed bands; there were murders and riots; six governors in succession were appointed by the President—two were removed, and three of them resigned in despair. At last, after five years of anarchy and bloodshed, the free-State party triumphed and slavery was excluded from Kansas.

8. The Dred Scott Decision.—The agitation received a fresh impulse at the beginning of Mr. Buchanan's administration from a decision of the Supreme Court of the United States in the case of a slave named Dred Scott, who sued for his freedom on the ground that his master had taken him into the free territory of Illinois. The court decided (March, 1857) that it had no jurisdiction in the suit, because a negro could not be a citizen of the United States. Chief-Justice Taney also expressed the opinion that the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional, slaves being private property which Congress had no right to interfere with.

9. Great excitement was caused by this decision at the

North. The abolition party was strengthened ; associations for helping slaves to escape became more active ; " personal-liberty bills " were passed in several of the free States to prevent the return of negroes under the Fugitive Slave Law without a trial by jury. Finally an enterprise was undertaken by an anti-slavery enthusiast named John Brown, with about twenty companions, which aroused the whole country.

10. John Brown's Raid.—Brown's plan was to raise an insurrection among the slaves of Virginia and arm them to liberate their people by force. In October, 1859, he and his men surprised and seized the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, where there was a large store of muskets and ammunition ; but the negroes did not rise, and Brown was overpowered by National and State troops, and hanged (December 2) by the authorities of Virginia.

11. Elections of 1860.—The political contest of 1860 was looked to as a critical time. There were now fifteen slave States—namely, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Kentucky, Tennessee, Louisiana, Mississippi, Missouri, Arkansas, Florida, and Texas ; and there were eighteen free States—Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Iowa, Wisconsin, California, Minnesota, and Oregon. The preponderance of the free States was likely to be soon increased by the admission of Kansas, which had already adopted an anti-slavery constitution, and by the formation of new communities in the Northwest ; and the rapid growth of the Republican party was an indication that the North was inflexibly opposed to any further extension of slave territory.

12. There were four candidates for the Presidency. John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky (then Vice-President), was nominated by the extreme Southern or pro-slavery party, Stephen A. Douglas by the more moderate Democrats, Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, by the Republicans, and John

Bell, of Tennessee, by a small organization calling itself the Constitutional Union party. Mr. Lincoln was elected by a large majority, having all the free-State votes except three in New Jersey.

13. Abraham Lincoln.—Abraham Lincoln was born in



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

Kentucky, February 12, 1809. His parents were poor, and he had little education except what he gave himself by hard study in the intervals of his work. He removed to Illinois while a young man, taught himself law, and was elected to the Legislature and Congress. He first won a national reputation in 1858, when he and Mr. Douglas, being rival candidates for the United States Senate, canvassed Illinois together, holding a public debate on

the slavery question, which attracted the attention of the whole country. Mr. Douglas advocated his scheme of "popular sovereignty," and Mr. Lincoln stated with great force the arguments for the prohibition of slavery in all the new Territories.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the principal political question after the annexation of Texas?
2. What occurred when California applied for admission?
3. What was Henry Clay's compromise?
4. What was the effect of the Fugitive Slave Law?
5. What was the Kansas-Nebraska bill?
6. Why was it opposed at the North?
7. What followed in Kansas?
8. What was the Dred Scott decision?
10. Give an account of John Brown.
11. How were the States divided in 1860?
12. Who were the candidates for the Presidency in that year? Who was elected?
13. Tell something about Abraham Lincoln.

PART FIFTH.

THE CIVIL WAR.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

SOUTHERN STATES SECEDE—THE CONFEDERACY ORGANIZED—FORT SUMTER—BULL RUN—THE NEUTRAL STATES—THE BLOCKADE AND THE NAVY—THE TRENT AFFAIR.

1. Secession.—The election of a President opposed to the extension of slavery was taken by the Southern leaders as a sufficient reason for breaking up the Union. South Carolina immediately called a convention, which, on the 20th of December, 1860, declared the union between South Carolina and the other States dissolved; and Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas seceded in the course of the next six weeks. On the 4th of February, 1861, delegates met at Montgomery, Alabama, and organized the new confederacy under the title of the Confederate States of America. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was chosen temporary President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-President. The next November they were both regularly elected for six years.

2. Inauguration of President Lincoln.—Mr. Lincoln was inaugurated March 4, 1861. In his address he declared that he had neither the right nor the wish to interfere with slavery where it already existed; that no State could rightfully secede; and that he should enforce the laws of the Union in all the States to the best of his ability. This declaration agreed with the prevailing sentiment at the North.

3. Fort Sumter.—Little or no resistance had been made to the secessionists during the four months between the election and the close of Mr. Buchanan's term, but Mr. Lincoln at once prepared for serious measures. His first attempt was to reinforce Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, where Major Anderson, with a garrison of eighty men, still flew the national flag. Before the reinforcements could arrive the Confederate batteries opened fire on the fort, April 12, and on the 14th Major Anderson was obliged to abandon it and sail for New York.

4. This was the beginning of the war. In the North there was a general uprising in defence of the Union, which until now the people had refused to believe in danger. In the South all the slave States speedily joined the Confederacy, except Delaware and Maryland, which were bound to the North by their geographical position, and Kentucky and Missouri, which wished to remain neutral.

5. The day after the evacuation of Fort Sumter Mr. Lincoln called for 75,000 volunteers (April 15), and early in May there was a further call for 42,000 volunteers and 40,000 men for the regular army and navy. The full number was obtained at once, and many more might have been accepted if the government had been able to arm them. On the other side the Confederate armies were recruited quite as easily as the Northern, and they were ably commanded by Southern graduates of West Point, who resigned from the Federal army when their States seceded.

6. Early Operations.—On the 19th of April a murderous attack upon Pennsylvania and Massachusetts troops, on their way to Washington, was made by a secessionist mob in the streets of Baltimore, and for some days the road to the capital through that city was closed to Northern troops.

7. The important navy-yard at Norfolk, Virginia, being menaced by the Confederates, was evacuated by the officer in command, after an attempt, only partly successful, to destroy the ships, buildings, and stores. The Confederates

captured the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, worsted General Butler in a small engagement at Big Bethel, near Fortress Monroe, and even caused some alarm for the safety of Washington. On the other hand, McClellan and Rosecrans won a series of Union victories at Rich Mountain, Carrick's Ford, Carnifex Ferry, and other places in Western Virginia.

8. The principal Federal army was stationed on the Virginia side of the Potomac, opposite Washington. It was intended for the advance upon Richmond, the Confederate capital, and its commander was General Irvin McDowell. The Confederates had their main body at Manassas Junction, about thirty miles in front of McDowell, and their commander was General Beauregard. They had another force, under General Joseph E. Johnston, near Winchester; but the Union General Patterson confronted this body with an army large enough to keep it in check.

9. **Bull Run.**—McDowell's men began their march in good spirits, and on the 21st of July encountered the enemy near Bull Run, a small stream in front of the Confederate camp. The attack was well planned, and during the first part of the day the Union army was generally successful; but late in the afternoon General Johnston, having eluded Patterson, came upon the field with his fresh troops, and fortune turned. McDowell's army, seized with a panic, fled in great disorder, having lost about 3,000 men, while the losses on the other side were 2,000.

10. This disaster only stimulated the North to fresh exertions. Congress authorized the enrollment of 500,000 volunteers and voted \$500,000,000 for the expenses of the war. General McClellan, who had made a reputation in Western Virginia, was called to the command of the Army of the Potomac in place of McDowell, and soon afterward he became general-in-chief on the retirement of the aged and infirm General Scott.

11. McClellan spent eight or nine months organizing and drilling his army without offering battle. A detach-

ment of his troops on the Upper Potomac was sent on a reconnoissance into Virginia under Colonel Baker, senator from Oregon, and, being attacked by the Confederates at Ball's Bluff, was disastrously defeated (October 21). Colopel Baker was among the killed.

12. The Neutral States.—Although Missouri had declared itself neutral, a strong party, with which the governor was acting, wished to carry it over to the Confederacy, and it soon became a theatre of war. During the summer and autumn the tide of battle swept back and forth across the State, Lyon (killed at Wilson's Creek, August 10), Sigel, Frémont, Hunter, and Halleck commanding the Union forces, and Sterling Price and McCulloch distinguishing themselves on the other side. The heroic defence of Lexington by two thousand men of the Irish Brigade of Chicago, under Colonel James A. Mulligan, was one of the stirring incidents of this campaign. The Confederate armies were at last driven out and Missouri was saved to the Union.

13. Neutral Kentucky was also kept in a condition of war. In September Leonidas Polk, Bishop of the Protestant Episcopal Church, having received a commission as major-general in the Confederate army, occupied Hickman and Columbus, towns on the Mississippi in Southwestern Kentucky. It was soon after this that Ulysses S. Grant, recently appointed a brigadier-general of volunteers, first came into notice by the capture of Belmont, in Missouri, opposite Columbus.

14. The Blockade and the Navy.—At the beginning of the war the President proclaimed a blockade of all the Southern ports (April 19); and to enforce this measure the most energetic efforts were made to increase the navy. Great numbers of merchant-vessels were bought and converted into men-of-war, and the blockade soon became so strict that foreign nations were obliged to respect it. The operations of the blockading fleet were aided by the capture of several of the Southern harbors. Commodore

Stringham and General Butler reduced the forts at Hatteras Inlet, commanding the entrance to Albemarle and Pamlico sounds (August 29), and Commodore Dupont took the forts at Port Royal Harbor, South Carolina, November 7.

15. In spite of the Federal cruisers, several Confederate men-of-war and privateers got to sea and did much damage. The *Sumter*, under Captain Semmes, destroyed many merchant-ships, but was finally chased into Gibraltar by the United States man-of-war *Tuscarora*, and, being unable to evade that vessel, was there sold. Afterwards the Confederates obtained much better vessels, built expressly for them in England.

16. Blockade-running became an active business with Englishmen, the headquarters of the contraband trade being established at the British port of Nassau, in the West Indies. By these operations the Confederates obtained arms and other supplies. Many of the vessels were caught and confiscated, but the profits on a successful voyage were so enormous that adventurers were ready to take the risk.

17. **Foreign Relations.**—The Confederates were treated with marked favor by England and France, the governments of both which countries would have been glad to see the United States dismembered. The South counted upon their assistance, especially that of England, where the scarcity of cotton, in consequence of the blockade, caused distress in the factory-towns. Two Confederate commissioners, Messrs. Mason and Slidell, were despatched to London and Paris, escaping first to Cuba, and sailing thence in the British passenger-steamer *Trent*.

18. On the 8th of November, 1861, Captain Charles Wilkes, of the United States frigate *San Jacinto*, stopped the *Trent* at sea and forcibly took off Messrs. Mason and Slidell and their secretaries. This action, which was illegal and unauthorized, produced an angry excitement in England, and Lord Palmerston made a peremptory demand for the surrender of the prisoners.

19. The American government had already disavowed Captain Wilkes's act, and in an able paper the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward, showed that while it was justified by the British claim of the "right of search," which led to the war of 1812, it was contrary to American principles, and must therefore be condemned. Messrs. Mason and Slidell were released and sent to England.

20. Just before this occurrence President Lincoln requested two confidential agents to visit France and England, in order to help the cause of the Union and avert the danger of foreign war by their influence with the governments and persons of distinction. The persons selected for this delicate and important trust were Archbishop Hughes, of New York, and Mr. Thurlow Weed. They sailed in the beginning of November and rendered very valuable service, Mr. Weed in England and the archbishop in France.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was the result of the election regarded by the Southern leaders? What did South Carolina do? What States followed her example? Where was the Confederacy organized? Who were chosen President and Vice-President?

2. What position did President Lincoln take in his inaugural address?

3. What occurred at Fort Sumter?

4. How did this affect the people North and South?

5. What was the result of the first calls for volunteers?

6. What happened in Baltimore?

7. What was done at Norfolk?

8. Where was the principal Federal army posted? The Confederate?

9. Describe the battle of Bull Run.

10. Who was called to the command on the Potomac?

11. What was the affair at Ball's Bluff?

12. What occurred in Missouri?

13. Who captured Belmont, in Missouri?

14. How was the blockade enforced?

15. What is said of Confederate ships?

16. Of blockade-running?

17. How were the Confederates treated abroad? What was the feeling of the French and English governments? What Southern commissioners were sent to Europe?

18, 19. Give an account of the *Trent* affair.

20. What confidential agents were sent abroad by President Lincoln?

CHAPTER XLIX.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR—FORTS HENRY AND DONELSON—SHILOH—
BRAGG AND BUELL IN KENTUCKY—BRAGG AND ROSECRANS—CAP-
TURE OF NEW ORLEANS—THE MERRIMAC AND THE MONITOR.

1. The Second Year of the War.—At the beginning of 1862 the number of men under arms, North and South, was not far from a million. The Confederates held possession of the Mississippi River from its mouth to the southern boundary of Kentucky, and a chain of strong positions extending thence through Tennessee and Kentucky to the border of Virginia. At the East they were in great force between the Potomac and the Rappahannock.

2. The Federal government confronted them with a large army under General Halleck, whose headquarters were at St. Louis, a second under General Buell at Louisville, and the fine body of two hundred thousand men organized by McClellan on the Potomac. Simon Cameron, who had been Secretary of War, resigned January 20, 1862, and was succeeded by Edwin M. Stanton, a man of remarkable force, who held office during the rest of the war.

3. Operations in the West.—President Lincoln ordered all the armies to advance simultaneously on Washington's birthday, February 22, but McClellan not being ready, this plan could not be strictly carried out. In the West, however, after General George H. Thomas, with a part of Buell's command, had gained an important victory at Mill Spring, Kentucky, a movement was made by General Grant, from Halleck's army, and Commodore Foote with a flotilla of gunboats, against the Confederate forts Henry and Donelson on the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers.

4. Fort Henry was reduced by the gunboats (February 6) before Grant arrived. Fort Donelson was a much stronger work and offered a more formidable resistance. The gunboats could do little here on account of the height of the river-bank, but Grant pressed the land attack with such vigor that the garrison surrendered, February 16. These victories obliged the Confederates to give up the whole of Kentucky and most of Tennessee.

5. **Battle of Shiloh.**—The Confederates retired to Corinth, Mississippi, where Grant and Buell prepared to attack them; but before these generals could unite Grant was assailed by the enemy at Pittsburg Landing, or Shiloh, on the Tennessee River, and a dreadful battle ensued, in which the Federal troops were driven back step by step to the edge of the river (April 6). Buell arrived in the course of the night, and the next morning the battle was renewed, ending in a complete Federal victory. The Confederate commander, Albert Sidney Johnston, was killed on the first day, and Beauregard took his place.

6. **Corinth.**—Halleck now took command of the armies of Grant and Buell, and advanced slowly against Corinth, which he occupied May 30, Beauregard retiring without fighting. Commodore Foote in the meantime had taken the gunboats into the Mississippi, and, with General Pope, had captured a strong post called Island No. 10; and Captain C. H. Davis, after destroying a number of Confederate iron-clads, reduced Fort Pillow and Memphis.

7. **Campaign in Kentucky.**—During the summer the Confederates made a great effort to repair their disasters in Kentucky, and for this purpose they invaded the State with two armies. One, under Kirby Smith, advanced beyond Frankfort and threatened Cincinnati, and the other, under Bragg, hastened towards Louisville. Buell, as soon as the object of Bragg was disclosed, left Nashville, and by forced marches reached Louisville a day ahead of his adversary. There he obtained reinforcements, and the Confederates were forced

to fall back. Bragg and Kirby Smith united at Frankfort, and on October 8 Buell fought a severe battle with them at Perryville. This put an end to the invasion of Kentucky ; but the government was dissatisfied, and Buell was presently relieved by Rosecrans.

8. Operations of Rosecrans.—General Rosecrans, being in command at Corinth, had greatly distinguished himself there by two victories : the first over Price at Iuka, a few miles from that town, September 19 ; the second over a combined attack by Price and Van Dorn, October 4.

9. Appointed to the Army of the Cumberland, he attacked Bragg at Stone River, near Murfreesboro, in Central Tennessee, December 31, and by his bravery and ability saved the day after it had been apparently lost. On the 2d of January, 1863, Bragg renewed the battle, but was signally defeated and obliged to retire to Chattanooga, while Rosecrans fortified Murfreesboro as a depot of supplies.

10. Capture of New Orleans.—While the Federal armies were slowly fighting their way down the Mississippi a fleet of forty-five ships, gunboats, and mortar-boats under Flag-Officer Farragut, and an army of 15,000 men under General Butler, ascended the river from the Gulf of Mexico to attack New Orleans. The principal Confederate defences which they had to encounter were the two strong forts, Jackson and St. Philip, seventy-five miles below the city. In front of Fort Jackson the river was closed by a line of hulks and heavy chains.

11. After Captain David D. Porter, with the mortar-boats, had bombarded Fort Jackson for six days, Farragut bravely determined to run past the defences with the best vessels of his fleet. The chain barrier was cut, and before daylight on the 24th of April, 1862, the fleet moved slowly up the river, Farragut leading the way in the *Hartford*. The forts were passed under a tremendous cannonade ; nearly all the Confederate fleet was destroyed or

captured; and the next day Farragut appeared before New Orleans.

12. The city was occupied by General Butler, the Confederates having retired. The forts surrendered to Captain Porter. Farragut pushed up the river, took possession of Baton Rouge, the State capital, passed the Confederate batteries at Vicksburg, and met the gunboats of Captain Davis.

13. Operations on the Coast.—The process of closing the Confederate forts continued during the spring, when General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough captured Roanoke Island, February 8; Newbern, N. C., March 14; and Fort Macon, at Beaufort, N. C., April 25. Commodore Dupont occupied harbors in Georgia and Florida, and General Gillmore took Fort Pulaski, on the Savannah River, April 11, thus blocking the way to Savannah.

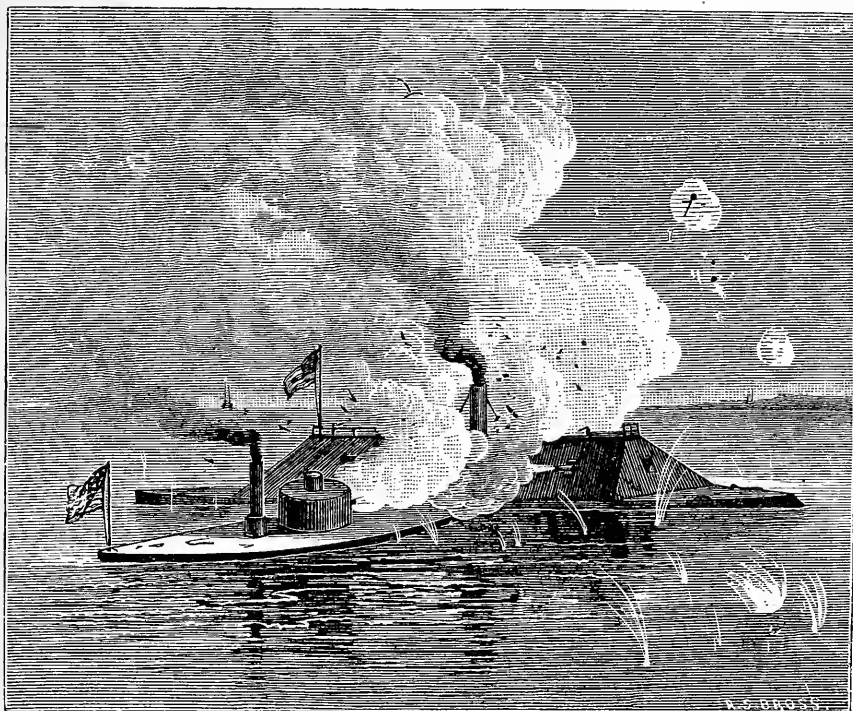
14. The Merrimac and the Monitor.—When the Norfolk navy-yard was abandoned at the beginning of the war, the steam-frigate *Merrimac* was one of the vessels scuttled and sunk. The Confederates raised her and converted her into a ram, which they called the *Virginia*. Her deck and sides were covered with a slant roof of railroad iron, off which shot and shell rolled harmless.

15. On the 8th of March, 1862, this strange craft, looking like nothing ever seen before, came out of the Elizabeth River and headed for the Federal fleet in Hampton Roads. She sank the *Cumberland* by a blow with her armored ram, and drove the *Congress* ashore and burned her. At night she went back to Norfolk.

16. The next morning she came out again to complete the work of destruction, and there appeared to be no way of saving the rest of the fleet. But before she reached the ships a still more curious vessel than the *Merrimac* ran out to meet her. This was the *Monitor*, a little iron-clad of a new design, invented by Captain John Ericsson, which had arrived during the night under command of Lieutenant Worden, this being her first voyage. She was not more than one-

fifth as large as her antagonist. Her hull was almost entirely under water, and on her deck she had a revolving, shot-proof turret of iron, with two enormous guns inside. The sailors called her "a cheese-box on a raft."

17. The *Monitor* darted at the great Confederate vessel, and for five hours the battle went on, with great expenditure of powder, but with slight effect on either side. At



FIGHT OF THE IRON-CLADS MONITOR AND MERRIMAC.

last the *Merrimac* was disabled and returned to Norfolk. She never appeared again. This was the first battle ever fought between iron-clad ships, and the history of it was studied with great interest all over the world. A number of gunboats on the *Monitor* pattern were immediately constructed, and Ericsson's idea influenced the naval systems of all foreign nations.

QUESTIONS.

1. How were the Confederates posted at the beginning of 1862?
2. The Federal troops? What change was made in the Department of War?
3. What were the first movements in the West?
4. Give an account of the capture of Forts Henry and Donelson.
5. Of the battle of Shiloh.
6. Of the march upon Corinth. Of the naval operations on the Mississippi.
7. What did the Confederates attempt in Kentucky? How did Buell meet them? The result? Who succeeded Buell?
8. What had Rosecrans done at Corinth?
9. Give an account of the battles of Stone River.
10. What expedition was sent against New Orleans? How was the city defended?
11. Describe the capture.
12. Describe the further operations of Farragut?
13. What was done on the coast?
14. Describe the *Merrimac*.
15. What did this vessel do in Hampton Roads?
16. Describe the *Monitor*.
17. The battle and its result.

CHAPTER L.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR, CONTINUED—McCLELLAN ON THE PENINSULA—POPE IN VIRGINIA—SECOND BATTLE OF BULL RUN—INVASION OF MARYLAND—BATTLE OF ANTIETAM—BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG.

1. McClellan's Advance.—The course of affairs in Virginia during the year 1862 was in strong contrast with the progress of the Federal arms at the West. General McClellan decided to march against Richmond by the peninsula between the James and York rivers ; and accordingly, having transported about 120,000 men to Fortress Monroe by water, he began his advance, April 4, over the ground made memorable by the surrender of Lord Cornwallis to General Washington.

2. Delayed nearly a month by the task of reducing a line of defences which the Confederates had built across the peninsula, he occupied Yorktown May 4, gained the battle of Williamsburg May 5, and advanced within seven miles of Richmond. Norfolk, threatened by General Wool, was evacuated by the Confederates, and the ram *Merrimac* was blown up to prevent its falling into the hands of the Union forces. A panic broke out in Richmond, and the Confederate Congress adjourned in haste.

3. In the meantime, however, a series of operations in the Shenandoah Valley, which lies between the Blue Ridge and the Alleghany Mountains, changed the face of affairs. That fertile valley was of great value to the Confederates, because it produced abundant food for their armies, and it was also an avenue by which they could reach the Potomac and threaten Washington. McClellan had sent a corps under General Banks into the Valley in February, and Banks succeeded in pushing the enemy as far south as Harrisonburg,

the division of General Shields being especially distinguished in the advance. General Frémont now approached from the West, trying to unite with Banks.

4. This was prevented by the brilliant movements of the Confederate General T. J. Jackson, popularly known as "Stonewall Jackson," because his troops at Bull Run were said to stand as firm as a stone-wall. He won a victory at Front Royal, May 23, drove Banks across the Potomac, checked Frémont at Cross Keys, June 8, and overpowered Shields at Port Republic.

5. President Lincoln became alarmed for the safety of the capital, and detached McDowell's corps from McClellan's command, retaining it in front of Washington. Soon afterwards Halleck was called from the West to become general-in-chief, leaving McClellan only the Army of the Potomac.

6. **The Chickahominy.**—On the 31st of May the Confederates attacked McClellan's left wing, which had been pushed across the Chickahominy at Fair Oaks and Seven Pines, and a battle ensued, lasting two days and memorable for heroism on both sides. The result was a Union victory. The Confederate commander, General Joseph E. Johnston, was severely wounded, and the Army of Virginia was led by General Robert E. Lee during the rest of the war.

7. Lee was repulsed in an attack upon the Federal lines at Mechanicsville, June 26 ; but he fell upon them again at Gaines's Mill, or Cold Harbor, the next day, and drove them across the Chickahominy with great loss. His cavalry, under General Stuart, rode entirely around the Federal army and destroyed a quantity of stores at White House, on the Pamunkey, which was McClellan's base of supplies.

8. **The Seven Days' Battles.**—McDowell had been expected to advance by way of Fredericksburg and join McClellan's right ; but McDowell being retained at Washington on account of the defeat of Banks in the Valley, it became

evident that the Army of the Potomac could no longer keep up its communications with the York River on the right, and McClellan decided upon the difficult manœuvre of changing his base to the James.

9. This flank movement began on the night of the 28th and continued until July 1, the troops marching all night and



fighting all day, Lee attacking them at Golding's Farm, Savage's Station, White Oak Swamp, etc., and directing a heavy force against them at Malvern Hill, near the James, where, however, he was signally repulsed. This was the last of a series of engagements known as the "Seven Days' Battles,"

in the course of which McClellan lost over fifteen thousand men. Lee suffered almost as much. After the battle of Malvern Hill McClellan fell back to Harrison's Landing, on the James, and fortified himself in a strong position where the gunboats could protect him.

10. Abandonment of the Peninsula.—General Pope had been called from the West and placed in command of the troops in front of Washington, consisting of the corps of McDowell, Banks, and Frémont. But Pope and McClellan were now so posted that neither could help the other. McClellan was consequently ordered to abandon the Peninsula and transfer his whole army by boats to the Potomac.

11. The Second Battle of Bull Run.—Lee made the most of this opportunity to attack Pope. He defeated Banks at Cedar Mountain, August 9, and pressed forward toward Washington, Pope falling back as he advanced, and trying to hold the enemy in check by continual fighting until McClellan should arrive. The ground was stubbornly contested; but Stonewall Jackson succeeded in reaching Pope's rear through an undefended pass in the Bull Run Mountains, and threatened to cut him off from Washington.

12. From the 26th of August to the 1st of September there was an almost uninterrupted battle, a part of the fighting taking place on the old field of Manassas, and being known as the second battle of Bull Run. Portions of McClellan's force arrived during these critical days and were placed under Pope, but Pope complained that some of them did not properly support him. In an engagement at Chantilly, September 1, the Confederates were repulsed; but Pope was now greatly outnumbered, and, having lost about thirty thousand men and a quantity of guns and stores, he retreated to the defences of Washington. General McClellan, whose popularity with the soldiers was unbounded, was again placed in charge of the Army of the Potomac.

13. Invasion of Maryland.—Lee now disregarded Wash-

ington, and, moving further up the Potomac, crossed into Maryland at Leesburg, while Jackson proceeded still higher up the river and captured Harper's Ferry. McClellan pushed between Jackson and Lee, and defeated the latter at South Mountain, September 14, but the Confederate leader secured his communication with Jackson by falling back.

14. Battle of Antietam.—The Confederates united at Sharpsburg, Maryland, on a little stream called the Antietam, which flows into the Potomac, and there a severe battle was fought, September 17, 1862, Lee having about 40,000 men engaged, and McClellan 57,000. The fighting lasted all day, with a loss of over 12,000 on the Union side, and probably as many on the other. At the close of the slaughter each army held its own ground, but neither was in a condition to renew the struggle next day, and Lee retired and recrossed the Potomac.

15. The invasion was thus repelled, but the President was dissatisfied with General McClellan's management of the campaign, and in November replaced him by General Burnside. The new commander moved at once towards Richmond, crossed the Rappahannock at Fredericksburg, and on the 13th of December assailed the heights back of that town, where Lee with 80,000 men awaited him behind earthworks and a thick stone wall.

16. Battle of Fredericksburg.—It was in vain that Burnside's gallant soldiers stormed the hill; the enemy's artillery never failed to sweep away the heads of the columns before they could reach the top. The most formidable of the positions was the stone wall. The Irish brigade of Meagher assailed that no fewer than six times, going into the battle with twelve hundred men, and losing more than nine hundred of them. At night Burnside found himself everywhere repulsed. He had lost about twelve thousand men; the army was demoralized; and retreating to the north side of the river, he was replaced by General Hooker.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was General McClellan's plan of campaign?
2. Describe his advance. What occurred at Norfolk?
3. Why was the Shenandoah Valley important to the Confederates? What did General Banks undertake there?
4. How was Banks defeated?
5. What was the effect at Washington?
6. Give an account of the battle of Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines. Who now became the Confederate commander?
7. What did Lee accomplish in the next engagements?
8. How were McClellan's movements affected by the withholding of McDowell's corps?
9. Give an account of the Seven Days' battles.
10. What change of plan was ordered by the government?
11. What did Lee do? How did Pope meet him?
12. Describe Pope's Virginia campaign.
13. What was Lee's next move?
14. Give an account of the battle of Antietam.
15. Who succeeded McClellan? What was his plan?
16. Describe the battle of Fredericksburg. Who succeeded Burnside?

CHAPTER LI.

THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR—CHANCELLORSVILLE—GETTYSBURG—VICKSBURG—THE DRAFT—CHICKAMAUGA—CHATTANOOGA—CONFEDERATE CRUISERS.

1. Emancipation.—After the battle of Antietam President Lincoln made proclamation that the slaves would be declared free in all States which did not return to the Union by the close of the year. In accordance with this promise he issued on the 1st of January, 1863, his Proclamation of Emancipation, in which he declared all slaves in the States or parts of States "in rebellion against the United States" to be henceforth for ever free.

2. Battle of Chancellorsville.—General Hooker, after reorganizing and strengthening the Army of the Potomac, began a fresh advance towards Richmond with 120,000 men. He crossed the Rappahannock above and below Fredericksburg, and met Lee at Chancellorsville, about five miles from the scene of Burnside's defeat. Lee had not more than half as many men as Hooker, but the position was greatly in his favor.

3. The battle lasted all through the 2d and 3d of May. On the Federal left Sedgwick carried the Fredericksburg Heights, and was pushing on successfully when Stonewall Jackson surprised the right wing, put most of it to flight, and enabled Lee to turn the main body of the Confederate army upon Sedgwick, who was at last compelled to withdraw by night. Hooker recrossed the Rappahannock with a loss of 17,000 men. The Confederates sustained a severe misfortune in the death of Jackson, who was shot through mistake by some of his own troops.

4. Battle of Gettysburg.—Lee now repeated the manœuvre he had practised after the defeat of Pope, and hastened with

all his force to invade the North. He entered Pennsylvania through the Shenandoah Valley, and advanced as far as Chambersburg, threatening not only Washington but Baltimore and Philadelphia. Hooker moved in the same direction, keeping between Lee and the Federal capital. On the 28th of June Hooker was replaced in command of the Army of the Potomac by General George G. Meade.

5. The hostile armies, each nearly 100,000 strong, met near Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, on the 1st of July, Meade taking a formidable position on a line of hills, and awaiting his adversary's attack. The battle, which lasted three days, was one of the fiercest of the whole war, and it was not until the close of July 3 that, by the repulse of a desperate Confederate charge, General Meade made safe his victory. He had lost 23,000 men, and Lee 40,000. On the 4th of July Lee retreated to the Potomac. This was the turning-point of the war. The South was never able to collect so fine an army again, and never recovered from the exhaustion of the Gettysburg campaign.

6. **General Grant in the West.**—On the very day of Lee's retreat General Grant gained a decisive victory on the Mississippi. He had been trying for several months to take Vicksburg, the principal Confederate stronghold on the river, situated on a high bluff on the east bank. Foiled in all his attempts from the north side, and unable, on account of the nature of the country, to swing his army around from the north side to the east, or rear of the town, he crossed the Mississippi and marched down the west bank to Bruinsburg. There, with the aid of Commodore Porter's fleet, which had run the batteries, he recrossed to the Vicksburg side far below the city.

7. This was a daring movement, for it separated Grant from all his bases of supplies and obliged him to live on the country. General Joseph E. Johnston was, moreover, approaching from the East with an army for the relief of Vicksburg, and the garrison, under Pemberton, was marching out

to meet him. After defeating the Confederates at Port Gibson, Grant threw himself between these two armies, beat Johnston badly at Jackson, and then inflicted two defeats upon Pemberton, who was driven back into Vicksburg.

8. Two assaults upon the defences having failed, a regular siege began which lasted forty-five days. At the end of that time, being out of provisions and fearing an assault, Pemberton surrendered with 27,000 prisoners, July 4, 1863. Port Hudson, another strong place on the Mississippi, surrendered to General Banks four days later, and from this time the Union forces controlled the whole river, the Confederacy being thus cut in two.

9. **The Draft Riots.**—As early as April, 1862, the Confederate Congress had passed a conscription act, enrolling in the army all adult white males below a certain age. In March, 1863, the United States Congress passed a somewhat similar act. A draft under this law took place in New York City in July, just after the battle of Gettysburg, and was followed by a riot, which lasted four days (July 13–16), and resulted in a number of shocking murders and the destruction of \$2,000,000 worth of property. There were riots also in Boston, Jersey City, and other places.

10. **Battle of Chickamauga.**—After his brilliant victory near Murfreesboro in January, Rosecrans remained quiet for some time, preparing a new campaign. In June he advanced, and, compelling Bragg to evacuate Middle Tennessee, followed him into Georgia. There Bragg, having been heavily reinforced, turned to give battle at Chickamauga Creek. The first day's engagement, September 19, 1863, was indecisive; but on the 20th the Confederates gained a clear victory. The right wing of the Union army was routed, and only the stubborn resistance of Thomas on the left prevented the disaster from becoming general. Bragg, however, was unable to follow up his advantage, and Rosecrans retired unmolested to Chattanooga.

11. **Grant at Chattanooga.**—Rosecrans was superseded in

command of the Army of the Cumberland in October by General Thomas, and Grant, having been placed in charge of all the armies in the West, proceeded to Chattanooga to take personal direction of the operations at that important place. He was joined by Sherman from the West, and Hooker with two corps from the Army of the Potomac.

12. Bragg menaced the Union position from two parallel ranges called Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. Grant determined to take them both by assault. Hooker carried Lookout Mountain by storm, November 24, part of the fighting taking place in the midst of a thick mist, whence this is called "the battle above the clouds." The next day Missionary Ridge was scaled by the main army, Bragg retreating into Georgia, where he was soon afterwards relieved of his command. An important result of Grant's victory was the raising of the siege of Knoxville, where General Burnside had been making a gallant defence against Longstreet.

13. Charleston.—Many attempts had been made to reduce Charleston. An attack by a fleet of iron-clads under Commodore Dupont was beaten off April 7, 1863, and an assault upon Fort Wagner, on Morris Island, was repulsed in July. General Gillmore finally took Fort Wagner, September 7, after a bombardment from heavy batteries planted in the marshes, as well as from Commodore Dahlgren's fleet. Fort Sumter was reduced to ruins, and the blockading ships were able to enter the harbor, but no attempt was made to occupy the city.

14. Confederate Cruisers.—With the aid of the British government the Confederate authorities succeeded in fitting out several formidable cruisers, which in the course of the year 1863 did enormous damage to Northern commerce. The *Florida*, built at Liverpool, ran the blockade into Mobile, and issued from that port in January, 1863. She captured twenty-one vessels, and was then seized in the harbor of Bahia, Brazil (October, 1864).

15. The most important of the cruisers was the *Alabama*,

built at Liverpool for Captain Semmes after the sale of the *Sumter*. She put to sea in July, 1863. After destroying more than sixty vessels the *Alabama* challenged the United States war steamer *Kearsarge*, Captain Winslow, to fight her off the harbor of Cherbourg, France—an invitation which was gladly accepted. The two ships were fairly matched, but Captain Winslow had the better gunners, and after an action of about an hour the *Alabama* was sunk, Captain Semmes and many of his crew being picked up by an English yacht, while nearly all the rest were rescued by the *Kearsarge* (June 19, 1864).

16. By the operations of these cruisers, which obtained all their supplies, etc., in British ports, the foreign shipping trade of the United States was almost ruined, and what this country lost the English ship-owners secured. The unlawful conduct of Great Britain in this matter was long a cause of bad feeling between the two countries. The matter was at last settled by England's paying to the United States fifteen and a half million dollars in satisfaction of the "*Alabama* claims." (See p. 255.)

17. In June of this year the western counties of Virginia, which had refused to join the Southern Confederacy, were admitted into the Union as the State of West Virginia.

QUESTIONS.

1. What important proclamation was issued by President Lincoln? What is the date of Emancipation?
2. What was Hooker's plan?
3. Describe the battle. What celebrated general was killed?
4. What was Lee's next movement? What change occurred in the Army of the Potomac?
5. Where did the two armies meet? Give an account of the battle. The date? The consequences?
6. What was happening at the same time in the West? What was Grant's plan at Vicksburg?
- 7, 8. Describe the campaign and its result.
9. What disorders occurred at the North?

10. What movement did Rosecrans undertake in Tennessee? Give an account of the battle of Chickamauga and its sequel.
11. What changes of command were now made?
12. Describe the situation at Chattanooga. The battle.
13. What attempts were made upon Charleston? How was the port finally closed?
14. How did the Confederates obtain vessels of war?
15. Which was the most important of these cruisers? Give her history.
16. How did Great Britain profit by these ships?
17. How was the State of West Virginia formed?

CHAPTER LII.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR—GRANT IN COMMAND OF ALL THE ARMIES—
HIS ADVANCE TOWARDS RICHMOND—THE WILDERNESS—PETERS-
BURG—EARLY AND SHERIDAN—SHERMAN'S ATLANTA CAMPAIGN—
THOMAS AT NASHVILLE—THE MARCH TO THE SEA—FARRAGUT
AT MOBILE—FORT FISHER—RE-ELECTION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

1. Reorganization of the Armies.—In the spring of 1864 an important change was made in the war policy of the Federal government. So much had been lost by the failure of the various generals to co-operate with one another that it was determined to place General Grant in control of all the military operations of the United States, with the rank of lieutenant-general, never held before by any one in this country except Washington, although Scott had been lieutenant-general by brevet. Halleck remained at Washington with the title of chief of staff of the army.

2. The three Western armies, of the Ohio, the Cumberland, and the Tennessee, were now united under the command of Sherman, while Grant took personal direction of the campaign against Richmond, Meade retaining the immediate command of the Army of the Potomac. In a conference with Sherman, Grant arranged the plans for a simul-

taneous advance in the East and the West, to be made about the 1st of May.

3. The Wilderness.—The Army of the Potomac crossed the Rapidan May 4, 1864, and found itself on the edge of a table-land called the Wilderness, covered with a thick growth of bushes and small trees, a short distance west of the battle-field of Chancellorsville. It was Grant's object to push through this difficult country as rapidly as possible, and Lee's object to attack him incessantly while he was still entangled in the labyrinth of the woods.

4. The battles began on the 5th and continued without interruption till the 12th, both sides fighting like heroes and suffering severely, but Lee being slowly forced back or outflanked, and so compelled to retreat little by little. On the 9th Grant was clear of the Wilderness and concentrated near Spottsylvania Court-House. Here the most furious and obstinate fighting raged with little intermission during ten days. Grant, who had lost nearly twenty thousand men in the Wilderness, lost ten thousand more here, and among the killed was the commander of the Sixth Corps, General Sedgwick, a brave and thorough soldier. Lee's losses, however, had also been severe, General Hancock's corps alone taking seven thousand prisoners and twenty-one pieces of artillery; and Lee was much less able to bear such losses than Grant.

5. On the 11th Grant had telegraphed to Washington: "I propose to fight it out on this line, if it takes all summer." He continued, in spite of repeated repulses, to move to the left and try again. At the end of May he had reached McClellan's old battle-ground near the Chickahominy. There he fought two severe battles at Cold Harbor. In the second of these (June 3) Colonel McMahan, at the head of a New York regiment, succeeded in planting his colors inside the Confederate works, when he was killed. In twenty minutes the army was hurled back with the loss of ten thousand men.

6. Grant now crossed the Chickahominy, and, moving far to the right of his adversary, transferred his army beyond the James to assail Richmond from the south. This involved the reduction of the strongly-fortified town of Petersburg, on the Appomattox, practically a part of the defences of Richmond, from which it is twenty miles distant.

7. **Siege of Petersburg.**—Reinforced, so that his army now amounted to 150,000 men, Grant crossed the James, and in conjunction with General Butler made three attempts (June 15, 16, and 18) to carry Petersburg by assault. These trials failed, and cost the Federal commander ten thousand men. A battle a few days later on the Federal left, where Grant endeavored to seize the railroad running south from Richmond and Petersburg to Weldon, resulted in the loss of four thousand men with little compensating advantage. An attempt to capture one of the Confederate forts by exploding a mine under it, and throwing an assaulting column into the chasm, was a terrible failure (July 30). All through the summer the fighting continued at various parts of the line, and when Grant at last desisted from these bloody assaults and settled down to a regular siege, the losses of his army (from the crossing of the Rapidan in May to the end of October) reached the enormous total of 100,000 men, while Lee had lost about 40,000.

8. **Early's Invasion.**—Lee tried to loosen Grant's hold upon Petersburg by sending General Early into the Shenandoah Valley with a strong force. Hunter was defeated and driven out of the Valley, and Early crossed into Maryland, July 5, approaching within a few miles of Baltimore and Washington.

9. These cities were too well defended to tempt an attack, and Early returned to the Valley, carrying off a great many horses and cattle. At Winchester he turned and defeated a pursuing force under General Crook, July 23, the gallant General Mulligan, famous for his defence of Lex-

ington in 1861 (see page 222), being among the killed. Then Early crossed into Maryland again, entered Pennsylvania, and burned the town of Chambersburg.

10. Sheridan in the Valley.—General Sheridan was now sent into the Valley by General Grant with 30,000 troops. He defeated Early at Winchester, September 19, and at Fisher's Hill, September 21, and swept the whole Valley, destroying all the crops which he could not use, burning the barns and mills, and carrying off the stock. This devastation was ordered to prevent the Confederates from making any further use of the Valley as a source of supplies.

11. On October 19 Early, having obtained reinforcements, fell upon the Union troops at Cedar Creek, driving them in great confusion. Sheridan was at Winchester when this happened. Hearing the guns, he reached the field by hard riding in time to restore his lines and change the defeat into a victory. Early's army was practically broken up.

12. Sherman's Atlanta Campaign.—In accordance with Grant's plan for an advance of the Eastern and Western armies simultaneously, Sherman, with 100,000 men under Thomas, McPherson, and Schofield, started from Chattanooga May 7, three days after Grant's crossing of the Rapidan. His first object was the capture of Atlanta, Georgia, a very strongly fortified place about one hundred miles south of Chattanooga, important as a railroad centre and as the chief manufactory of Confederate military supplies.

13. Opposed to him were about 60,000 troops under Joseph E. Johnston, one of the very ablest of the Southern generals. Unwilling to risk a great battle with his inferior force, Johnston took adroit advantage of all the defensive positions which the country afforded, and fought when favorable opportunities offered, while Sherman with equal skill repeatedly turned his flanks and compelled him to fall back. By the 10th of July Johnston was behind the defences of Atlanta.

14. The campaign reflected great credit upon both commanders, but the Confederate government was dissatisfied with Johnston's cautious movements, and replaced him by Hood. Hood attacked Sherman with great spirit, July 20 and 26, but failed, and sacrificed thirteen thousand men in the fruitless assaults. At length, by a masterly movement, Sherman transferred almost his whole army to the rear of Atlanta, cutting Hood's forces in two. This obliged the Confederates, after some sharp fighting, to retreat in all haste, and Sherman entered Atlanta, September 2.

15. **Hood and Thomas.**—Sherman now prepared to carry out the second part of his plan, which was a bold march through the very heart of the South. Hood tried to counteract the movement by marching north into Tennessee; but Grant had foreseen just this expedient, and Thomas, with the Army of the Tennessee, was sent to meet the expected

invasion. Hood advanced towards Nashville, fighting an engagement, November 30, with General Schofield at Franklin, where the Confederates lost six thousand men. Among their killed was General Patrick Cleburne, called "the Stonewall Jackson of the West," an Irishman who had been a private in the British army, and who won a great reputation as a daring hard fighter.



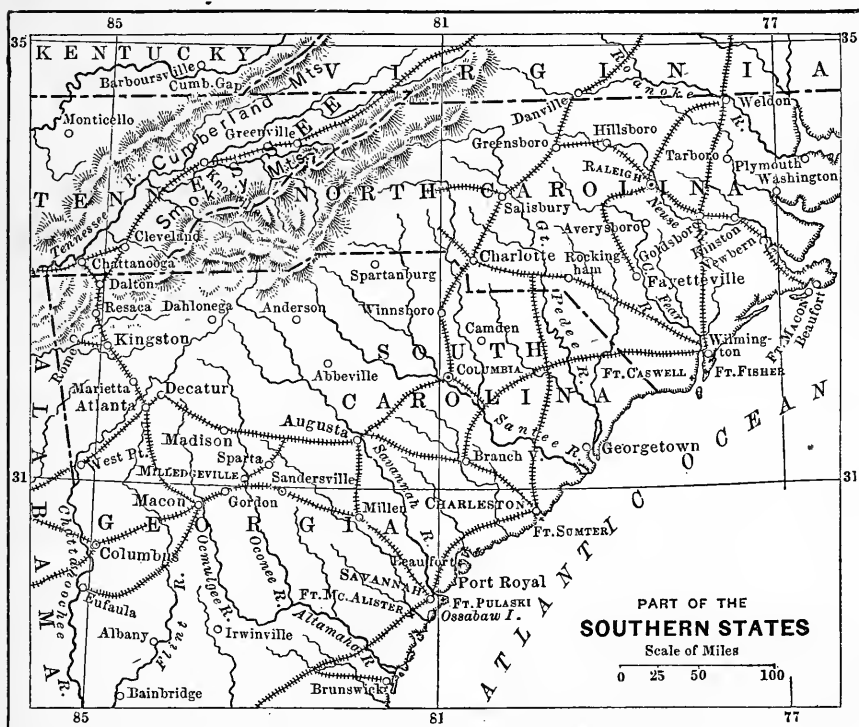
GEORGE H. THOMAS.

16. When Hood reached Nashville his command was reduced to about forty thousand men, while General Thomas, who awaited him there behind the fortifications, was rapidly increasing his forces, so that, although they had been greatly

inferior to Hood's at the beginning, the two armies were now nearly equal.

17. Thomas delayed, in spite of the urgency of General Grant, until his army was well prepared to strike. Then, on the 15th of December, he suddenly fell upon the Confederate lines, and in a two days' battle completely overthrew Hood's army and put the demoralized fragments to flight.

18. The March to the Sea —In the meanwhile General



Sherman, burning Atlanta, destroying the railroads and telegraphs in his rear, and sending back the sick and wounded and much of the baggage, began (November 14) his famous march to the sea. He was to break off all his connections with the North, and when he started he did not know where he should come out. His army, sixty-five thousand strong, was spread out over a breadth of forty miles, and moved with difficulty over deep roads and through dense swamps, sub-

sisting on the produce of the country, and followed by long trains of captured cotton and stores and thousands of fugitive slaves. There was little fighting. The Confederates had numerous bodies of troops which might have been concentrated to oppose the march, but Sherman's dispositions were so artfully made that they never could tell which way he was going.

19. For four weeks nothing was heard of him at the North. At last, when the country had become very uneasy, he appeared near Savannah and attacked Fort McAllister. This work was taken by assault December 13. Gunboats now came up the river, and on the 20th Savannah was evacuated, Sherman sending the news of the capture to President Lincoln as a "Christmas gift." The spoils of Savannah included one hundred and fifty heavy guns and twenty-five thousand bales of cotton.

20. The War on the Coast.—The only important ports, except Galveston, that remained open to the Confederates in the summer of this year were Mobile in Alabama and Wilmington in North Carolina. The entrance to Mobile Bay was defended by two formidable fortifications, besides a number of batteries. Farragut, with a fleet of eighteen vessels, fought his way past the forts, captured the iron-plated ram *Tennessee*, and, after a spirited engagement, obliged the defences to surrender to General Granger's co-operating troops (August 5, 1864). During the battle Farragut was tied in the rigging of his flag-ship, the *Hartford*, so that he could see and direct everything. The port of Mobile was now entirely closed.

21. The approach to Wilmington was commanded by Fort Fisher, at the mouth of Cape Fear River. A combined attack by Commodore Porter's fleet and troops under General Butler in December failed; but a stronger force under General Terry, with Porter's sailors and marines, carried the fort by assault January 16, 1865. The next month Wilmington was captured by General Schofield.

22. Re-election of President Lincoln.—The presidential election took place in November, 1864, and Mr. Lincoln was chosen for a second term by a very large majority, with Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, as Vice-President. The candidates of the Democrats were General McClellan and Mr. Pendleton, of Ohio.

QUESTIONS.

1. What military change was made in the spring of 1864?
2. How were the commands distributed?
3. What sort of country was the Army of the Potomac obliged to cross? What was Lee's policy?
4. Describe the battles of the Wilderness. What occurred near Spottsylvania Court-House?
5. At Cold Harbor?
6. To what point was the attack on Richmond now shifted?
7. Describe the first operations. What were the losses of each side during six months?
8. What happened in the Shenandoah Valley? How far did General Early go?
9. What were Early's next movements?
10. What did Sheridan do in the Valley?
11. Give an account of "Sheridan's Ride."
12. What was the first object of Sherman's advance at the West?
13. How was he opposed?
14. What is said of the campaign? How was Atlanta taken?
15. What was Sherman's next purpose? What was Hood's plan? How was Hood taken care of?
- 16, 17. Describe Thomas's operations at Nashville.
18. What was the plan of Sherman's "March to the Sea"? How was the march conducted?
19. Where was Sherman first heard of? How long had his whereabouts been unknown? What occurred at Savannah? What "Christmas gift" did Sherman send to the President?
20. Describe the battle of Mobile Bay.
21. Describe the attacks upon Fort Fisher.
22. What was the result of the presidential election of 1864?

CHAPTER LIII.

SHERMAN IN THE CAROLINAS—FALL OF RICHMOND—END OF THE WAR—ASSASSINATION OF THE PRESIDENT.

1. Sherman Marches North.—After resting a month at Savannah, Sherman started northward February 1, 1865, to co-operate with Grant. He seized Columbia, South Carolina, forced the evacuation of Charleston, and reached Fayetteville, North Carolina, without serious opposition. By this time, however, a considerable force under General Johnston had been collected in his front, and near Fayetteville there was a sharp engagement. At Goldsborough, North Carolina, Sherman was joined by Schofield and Terry from Wilmington. Halting his army there, to be refitted, he took a steamer for the James River, where he met the President and General Grant and arranged further plans.

2. Last Battles before Richmond.—The situation of Lee had become desperate. Sheridan had again defeated Early and destroyed Lee's communications in the rear of Richmond; Grant was pressing the siege of Petersburg with great vigor; the victorious Sherman was approaching from the South; and the Confederacy had used up all its resources and called out its last man. Lee's only hope was to cut his way out of Richmond and unite with Johnston in North Carolina. With this purpose he made a severe attack upon Grant's lines at Fort Steedman, east of Petersburg, March 25, expecting that the besieging army would be obliged to concentrate there to resist him, when he intended to break through at another place and to combine with Johnston in crushing Sherman. The movement failed, and Lee was repulsed with heavy loss.

3. On the 29th Grant began a general advance upon the Confederate positions before Petersburg. It continued with

some interruptions until the 2d of April. Sheridan, on the extreme left, gained a decisive and hard-won victory at Five Forks, April 1, practically demolishing Lee's right wing. The Confederate lines in two other places were carried by assault the next morning. Lee saw that it was no longer possible to hold either Petersburg or Richmond, and accordingly telegraphed to President Davis on Sunday morning, April 2, that the capital must be evacuated the same evening.

4. Fall of Richmond.—The Confederate authorities hastened to escape to Danville with what little they could carry, first setting fire to the shipping, tobacco warehouses, etc., at Richmond, and Lee retreated towards Lynchburg, still hoping to effect a junction there with Johnston. The Federal troops occupied Petersburg on the 3d, and entered Richmond the same day.

5. Surrender of Lee.—No time was wasted in celebrations of the victory. Grant pursued Lee with all speed. He had so disposed the Federal army that escape was almost im-



ROBERT E. LEE.

possible. Sheridan pushed out to the left, severed Lee's communications with Danville, and intercepted his provision-trains. Crook, Custer, and Wright cut off General Ewell and his whole corps, forcing them to surrender. Custer, under Sheridan's orders, captured the Confederate supplies again near Appomattox Court-House. On the 7th General Grant, reminding General Lee of the hopelessness of further resistance, asked him to lay down his arms, and April 9, 1865, the Confederate commander, finding his last avenue of retreat

blocked up, proposed an interview to discuss the terms of surrender. The two generals met at Appomattox the same day. The surrender was promptly agreed to. Lee took an affectionate farewell of his officers and men, and the prisoners, twenty-eight thousand in number (only eight thousand of whom had arms), were released on parole.

6. Surrender of Johnston.—Sherman had begun to press Johnston when news arrived of the surrender of Lee. Johnston thereupon capitulated April 26. All the other Confederate forces in the field speedily did the same, and the great civil war came to an end with enthusiastic rejoicings all over the North. Jefferson Davis, while trying to escape, was captured by a detachment of General James H. Wilson's cavalry at Irwinsville, Georgia, and was sent to Fortress Monroe, and long confined there a close prisoner on charge of treason. He was at last liberated on bail furnished by Horace Greeley and others, and all proceedings against him were finally abandoned.

7. Cost of the War in Men.—At the close of the war the Federal armies numbered 1,000,000 men, of whom about 600,000 were present in the field. The number of Confederate soldiers surrendered and paroled was 174,000, besides whom there were 63,000 prisoners then in the hands of the Federals. The whole number of men who served on the Federal side during the war was about a million and a half; 96,000 were killed, 184,000 died of disease while in the service; many thousands more died of wounds or sickness after leaving the service. The Confederates had about six hundred thousand men in the field, and about half of them lost their lives by wounds or disease. Almost the entire Southern population was reduced to poverty.

8. Assassination of President Lincoln.—In the midst of the rejoicings over the capture of Richmond a crime was committed at Washington which sent a thrill of horror through all civilized countries. President Lincoln was murdered at the theatre, on the evening of April 14, 1865, by

an actor named J. Wilkes Booth, who entered the box unperceived and shot Mr. Lincoln through the head, crying, "The South is avenged." Almost at the same time one of Booth's accomplices, named Payne, forced his way into the sick-room of Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, stabbed him repeatedly, and severely wounded several members of the family. Both the assassins escaped for the time, but they were soon caught. Booth was killed in resisting arrest. Payne and three others were hanged, and several persons concerned in the plot were sentenced to imprisonment. Mr. Seward recovered. Andrew Johnson, the Vice-President, took the oath of office as chief executive.

QUESTIONS.

1. Describe Sherman's march North.
2. What was the situation of General Lee? What was his plan?
3. Describe Grant's final advance. - What was the result?
4. When was Richmond occupied?
5. What is the date of Lee's surrender? Where did it take place?
How many men had he?
6. What became of Johnston's army? Of Jefferson Davis?
7. Tell something about the cost of the war in men.
8. Give an account of the assassination of the President.

PART SIXTH.

THE UNION RESTORED.

CHAPTER LIV.

END OF SLAVERY—RECONSTRUCTION—IMPEACHMENT OF PRESIDENT JOHNSON—PRESIDENT GRANT—THE TREATY OF WASHINGTON—THE CENTENARY OF INDEPENDENCE—PRESIDENT HAYES—PRESIDENT GARFIELD—PRESIDENT ARTHUR—PRESIDENT CLEVELAND.

1. The End of Slavery.—To supplement and confirm President Lincoln's military proclamation freeing the slaves in the insurgent States, the thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution was proposed by Congress, submitted to the States, adopted by the required three-fourths, and proclaimed as part of the fundamental law in December, 1865. It declared slavery for ever abolished in the entire Union. Thus a great evil was removed, and the South soon learned to accept the change as a blessing.

2. Reconstruction.—With respect to the manner of restoring the Southern States to their place and power in the Union, a quarrel soon arose between President Johnson and Congress, and the President separated himself from the Republican party. A law, called the "Tenure-of-Office Act," was passed to prevent his removing civil officers without the consent of the Senate (March, 1867). He removed Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, in violation, as it was alleged, of this law, and the House of Representatives thereupon determined to impeach him.

3. Impeachment of the President.—The articles of impeachment accused him of disobeying the tenure-of-office

law, and of various other offences, and the trial took place according to the Constitution, members of the House appearing as accusers and the Senate acting as judges. The exciting trial lasted two months, and ended in May with a vote of thirty-five guilty and nineteen not guilty; two-thirds being required to convict, this amounted to an acquittal.

4. Alaska.—The Russian possessions in North America, comprising a large and thinly-populated territory at the northwest corner of the continent, were purchased by the United States in 1867 for the sum of \$7,200,000. This territory is known as Alaska.

5. Election of President.—In 1868 General Grant was elected President, as the candidate of the Republican party, and Schuyler Colfax Vice-President. The Democratic candidates were Horatio Seymour, of New York, and Frank P. Blair, of Missouri.

6. The Alabama Claims.—The most important event of General Grant's administration was the settlement of the disputes with Great Britain about the responsibility for the depredations of the Confederate cruisers. President Lincoln addressed the British government on this subject, through Mr. Adams, the American minister at London. The correspondence was continued during the term of Mr. Johnson, the United States urging that Great Britain ought to make compensation for the injury inflicted by her acts, and England refusing to admit any liability.

7. A treaty was at last concluded at Washington, 1871, by which it was agreed that a tribunal of arbitrators appointed by both parties should meet at Geneva, in Switzerland, to decide the question. The tribunal of arbitration decided (1872) that Great Britain was liable, and assessed the damages at fifteen and a half millions of dollars, which sum was promptly paid.

8. The Fisheries.—The Treaty of Washington also provided for the settlement of a long-standing dispute about

the right of the people of the United States to catch fish off the coasts of the British-American provinces. A commission appointed by both parties met at Halifax, and after hearing argument decided (1878) that the United States should pay five and a half million dollars for the privilege of the fisheries during twelve years.

9. The Northwest Boundary.—A third question considered by the Treaty of Washington was the boundary between British America and the United States on the Northwest, where a small piece of territory was still in dispute. This controversy was referred to the Emperor of Germany, who decided in favor of the claim of the United States.

10. Re-election of President Grant.—In 1872 General Grant was nominated by the Republicans for a second term, with Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President. A number of Republicans, dissatisfied with the policy of his administration, organized themselves as the Liberal Republican party and nominated Horace Greeley, editor of the *New York Tribune*, for President, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri, for Vice-President. The Democratic National Convention met soon afterwards and resolved, instead of naming Democratic candidates, to support Greeley and Brown. Grant and Wilson were elected by a large majority. Mr. Greeley died a few weeks after the election.

11. Indian Hostilities.—Great trouble was caused soon after the close of the war by the depredations of the Indian tribes of the West and Southwest. The Sioux and Cheyennes began hostilities. An expedition was sent out against them under direction of General Hancock in 1867, and another beyond the Arkansas River in 1868, when General Custer gained an important victory. In an expedition against the Modocs of Oregon in 1873 General Canby was treacherously murdered during a parley with the Indian chiefs. In June, 1876, General Custer and his entire command of two hundred men were killed by the Indians on the Big Horn branch of the Yellowstone River, Montana.

12. Relations with Spain.—The relations between the United States and Spain were frequently disturbed by incidents growing out of an insurrection in Cuba. In October, 1873, the steamer *Virginius*, sailing under the United States flag, was seized on the high seas by a Spanish man-of-war on the ground that she was employed by the Cuban insurgents. Preparations were made to enforce amends for this wrong, but at the demand of the President Spain surrendered the steamer.

13. The Centenary of Independence.—In 1876 the United States celebrated the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence. There were great rejoicings throughout the country, and the various battles of the Revolution, as well as the signing of the Declaration, were commemorated by appropriate exercises. The Centennial year was chosen for the holding of a great international exhibition at Philadelphia, to which all the nations of the world were invited to contribute. It was opened in May and closed in November, having been visited by about ten millions of people.

14. Elections of 1876.—At the elections of 1876 the Republicans supported Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for President, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democratic candidates were Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. The contest was very close, and a dispute arose as to how the votes of certain States ought to be counted, both sides claiming them. Congress finally settled the controversy by creating an Electoral Commission, composed of five senators, five representatives, and five judges of the Supreme Court, to whom the disputed returns were referred. Under the rulings of this commission the votes were counted for Hayes and Wheeler, who thus obtained a majority of one, and were duly inaugurated March 4, 1877.

15. Election of President Garfield.—At the elections of

1880 the Republican candidates were James A. Garfield, of Ohio, for President, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, for Vice-President; while the Democrats nominated Major-General W. S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, for President, and William H. English, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The Republican ticket was successful.

16. Assassination of President Garfield.—On the 2d of July, 1881, as the President was about to take the train for New York in the railroad depot in Washington, he was shot and mortally wounded by a disappointed office-seeker from the West, named Guiteau, who at one time played the rôle of an anti-Catholic lecturer. The President lingered in great suffering until September 19, when he died. Vice-President Arthur was immediately sworn in as President. Guiteau was tried for murder, convicted, and was hanged June 30, 1882.

17. President Arthur's Administration.—The administration of President Arthur was peaceful and prosperous throughout. Towards the end of his term of office he succeeded in negotiating commercial treaties with Spain and the Republics of Central America, but the Senate refused to ratify them. The opposing candidates in 1884 for President and Vice President were—Republican, James G. Blaine, of Maine, for President, and John A. Logan, of Illinois, for Vice-President; Democratic, Grover Cleveland, of New York, for President, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The Democratic party was successful, and Grover Cleveland was inaugurated March 4, 1885.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was slavery finally put an end to? Did the South acquiesce in the change?
2. About what did the President and Congress quarrel? For what was the President impeached?
3. Give an account of the trial.
4. What Territory was purchased from Russia?
5. Who was elected President in 1868?

6. What was the most important act of President Grant's administration? 7, 8, 9. What did the Treaty of Washington provide? 10. What was the result of the election of 1872? 11. Give some account of recent Indian affairs. 12. What disagreement occurred with Spain? How was it settled? 13. What celebration was held in 1876? 14. What was the result of the election of that year? How was the dispute settled? 15. Who was elected in 1880? 16. Describe President Garfield's murder. 17. What is said of President Arthur's administration? What was the result of the election of 1884?

CHAPTER LV.

THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE UNITED STATES.

1. Growth of the Catholic Church in the United States.

—We have seen that the Catholic Church in the United States at the time of the Revolution was weak and unpopular. It comprised hardly more than twenty-five thousand people, with about twenty-five priests, scattered here and there, and no bishops, and in all the colonies—even in Maryland—it was oppressed by unjust laws and a persecuting public opinion. The first bishop was appointed in 1790, and for eighteen years he was the only one in the United States. There were no Catholic colleges or schools at the time of the Revolution, and no convents, hospitals, or asylums.

2. In fifty years after the erection of the see of Baltimore the number of bishops had increased to seventeen, the number of priests to four hundred and eighty-two, and the Catholic population to about a million and a half. Catholics were then about one in eleven of the whole number of inhabitants, while in 1776 they were only one in one hundred and twenty.

3. The increase in the numbers of the clergy was everywhere followed by a rapid development of Catholic spirit.

Faith was revived among descendants of the early settlers of Louisiana and Maryland, who had long been deprived of the consolations of their religion; churches suddenly arose where a Catholic, only a little while before, had been looked upon as a curiosity; Catholic settlers were found on the most remote frontiers; and many converts were made among the Protestant population.

4. After 1847 a still more remarkable impulse was given to the growth of the Church by the setting-in of the great tide of immigration. The early persecuting laws had for the most part been repealed by the States, and the general government had adopted a policy of hospitality to immigrants; and, favored by these circumstances, hundreds of thousands of Irish and German settlers came to seek their fortunes in the New World. Nearly all the Irish and a large proportion of the Germans were Catholics. Catholics were also among the less numerous arrivals from other foreign nations.

5. Thus at the end of the first hundred years of the nation the Catholics of the United States were supposed to amount to 6,500,000, or one-sixth of all the inhabitants of the Union, having increased, therefore, in the course of a century from one in one hundred and twenty to one in six.

6. They have given to the country a long line of illustrious men—theologians, philosophers, controversialists, scholars, preachers, statesmen, soldiers. Their missionaries have sought out the most savage Indian tribes; their sisterhoods have carried peace and comfort into hospitals and tenements; a flourishing branch of the Sisters of Charity was established in the United States by an American Catholic lady. Catholic schools have been founded in almost every city, and a system of Christian education has been sustained in the face of great difficulties. In 1887 Pope Leo XIII. gave his formal approval of the plans of a great Catholic university to be established at Washington under the control of the American hierarchy.

7. In March, 1875, Pope Pius IX. testified his regard for the Church in the United States by creating the first American cardinal. The hat was conferred upon the Most Reverend John McCloskey, Archbishop of New York, and he was solemnly invested with the insignia of his office in the Cathedral of New York, April 27, 1875. Cardinal McCloskey died October 10, 1885. On June 7, 1886, Pope Leo XIII. raised to the rank of Cardinal the Most Reverend James Gibbons, Archbishop of Baltimore.

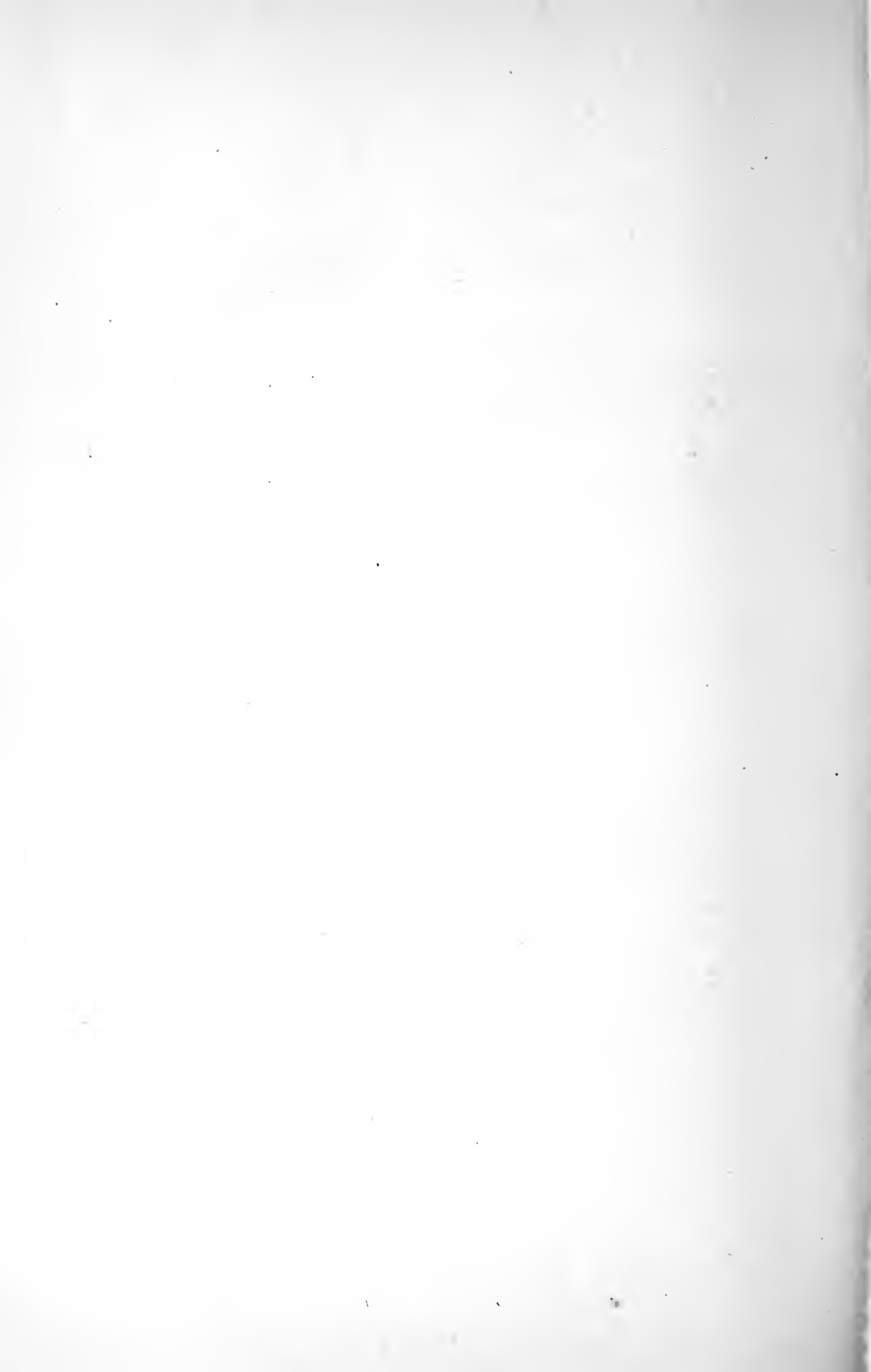


CARDINAL GIBBONS.

8. In 1886 the Church in the United States had 12 archbishops, 61 bishops and vicars-apostolic, 7,658 priests, 6,910 church buildings, 3,281 chapels and stations, 36 theological seminaries, 88 colleges, 593 academies, 2,697 parish schools, and 485 asylums and hospitals.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the condition of the Catholic Church in the United States at the time of the Revolution?
2. To what numbers had the clergy and laity increased in fifty years?
4. What great impulse was given to the American Church after 1847?
5. What was the number of Catholics in the Union in 1876?
6. What services have Catholics rendered to the country?
7. Who was the first American cardinal? When was he invested with the dignity? Who was the second?
8. Give some of the statistics of the American Church in 1886.



APPENDIX.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

PASSED JULY 4, 1776.

*A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America,
in Congress assembled.*

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over



these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world :

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained ; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise ; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States ; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States :



For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high-seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.



We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES ; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved ; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

(Signed) JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire.—JOSIAH BARTLETT, WM. WHIPPLE, MATTHEW THORNTON.

Massachusetts Bay.—SAMUEL ADAMS, JOHN ADAMS, ROBERT TREAT PAINE, ELBRIDGE GERRY.

Rhode Island.—STEPHEN HOPKINS, WILLIAM ELLERY.

Connecticut.—ROGER SHERMAN, SAMUEL HUNTINGTON, WILLIAM WILLIAMS, OLIVER WOLCOTT.

New York.—WM. FLOYD, PHILIP LIVINGSTON, FRANCIS LEWIS, LEWIS MORRIS.

New Jersey.—RICHARD STOCKTON, JOHN WITHERSPOON, FRANCIS HOPKINSON, JOHN HART, ABRAHAM CLARK.

Pennsylvania.—ROBERT MORRIS, BENJAMIN RUSH, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, JOHN MORTON, GEORGE CLYMER, JAMES SMITH, GEORGE TAYLOR, JAMES WILSON, GEORGE ROSS.

Delaware.—CÆSAR RODNEY, GEORGE READ, THOMAS M'KEAN.

Maryland.—SAMUEL CHASE, WILLIAM PACA, THOMAS STONE, CHARLES CARROLL of Carrollton.

Virginia.—GEORGE WYTHE, RICHARD HENRY LEE, THOMAS JEFFERSON, BENJAMIN HARRISON, THOMAS NELSON, JUN., FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE, CARTER BRAXTON.

North Carolina.—WILLIAM HOOPER, JOSEPH HEWES, JOHN PENN.

South Carolina.—EDWARD RUTLEDGE, THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN., THOMAS LYNCH, JUN., ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

Georgia.—BUTTON GWINNETT, LYMAN HALL, GEORGE WALTON.



CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, ensure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies,



The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years ; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year ; of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year ; and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside ; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States ; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof ; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall con-



stitute a quorum to do business ; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same ; and for any speech or debate in either house they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time ; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives ; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States ; if he approve, he shall sign it ; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If



any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States ; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8. The Congress shall have power—

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States ; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States ;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes ;

To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

To establish post-offices and post-roads ; .

To promote the progress of science and useful arts by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high-seas, and offences against the law of nations ;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

To provide and maintain a navy ;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions ;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and



for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings ; and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or ex-post-facto law shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another ; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States ; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment



of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships-of-war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.—THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows :

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress ; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[*The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves ; and they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President ; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But in choosing the President the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State

* This clause has been superseded by the Twelfth Amendment, on page 17.



having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.]

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes ; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President ; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office he shall take the following oath or affirmation : “ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION 2. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States ; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices ; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and, by and with the advice and con-



sent of the Senate, shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law : but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers ; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.—THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls ; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more States ; between a State and citizens of another State ; between citizens of different States ; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects,



In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State; and the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of



two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the legislature or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.—POWERS OF AMENDMENT.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress ; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.—PUBLIC DEBT, SUPREMACY OF THE CONSTITUTION, OATH OF OFFICE, RELIGIOUS TEST.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land ; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers,



both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.—RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,

President, and Deputy from Virginia.

(Signed by Deputies from all the States except Rhode Island.)

The Constitution was adopted by the Convention September 17, 1787, and was ratified by conventions of the several States at the following dates, viz. :

Delaware,	December 7, 1787.	Maryland,	April 28, 1788.
Pennsylvania,	December 12, 1787.	South Carolina,	May 23, 1788.
New Jersey,	December 18, 1787.	New Hampshire,	June 21, 1788.
Georgia,	January 2, 1788.	Virginia,	June 26, 1788.
Connecticut,	January 9, 1788.	New York,	July 26, 1788.
Massachusetts,	February 6, 1788.	North Carolina,	Nov. 21, 1789.
		Rhode Island,	May 29, 1790.

ARTICLES IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF, THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES,

Proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the Fifth Article of the foregoing Constitution.

ARTICLE I.—FREEDOM OF RELIGION.

The first ten articles were proposed by Congress in 1789, and declared adopted in 1791.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press, or of the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.



ARTICLE II.—RIGHT TO BEAR ARMS.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—QUARTERING SOLDIERS ON CITIZENS.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—SEARCH-WARRANTS.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—TRIAL FOR CRIME.

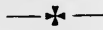
No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb, nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—RIGHTS OF ACCUSED PERSONS.

In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor ; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII.—SUITS AT COMMON LAW.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.



ARTICLE VIII.—EXCESSIVE BAIL.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.—RIGHTS RETAINED BY THE PEOPLE.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—RESERVED RIGHTS OF THE STATES.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.—RESTRICTION ON THE JUDICIAL POWER.

Proposed by Congress in 1794 and declared adopted in 1798.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ARTICLE XII.—METHOD OF ELECTING A PRESIDENT.

Proposed by Congress and declared adopted in 1804.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves ; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives



shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President ; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.—SLAVERY.

Proposed by Congress in 1865, and declared adopted December, 1865.

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.—CIVIL RIGHTS.

Declared adopted July 28, 1868.

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States ; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law ; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed ; but when



the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State (being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States), or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in said State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector, or President, or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties, for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned; but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave. But all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this Article.

ARTICLE XV.—CIVIL RIGHTS.

Declared adopted, March 30, 1870.

SECTION 1. The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.



PRESIDENTS AND

YEAR.	PRESIDENTS.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.	SECRETARIES OF STATE.	SECRETARIES OF TREASURY.
1789-1797	George Washington (Federal).	John Adams.	Thomas Jefferson, Edmund Randolph, Timothy Pickering.	Alex. Hamilton, Oliver Wolcott.
1797-1801	John Adams (Fed.)	Thos. Jefferson.	Timothy Pickering, John Marshall.	Oliver Wolcott, Samuel Dexter.
1801-1809	Thomas Jefferson (Republican).	Aaron Burr, George Clinton.	James Madison.	Samuel Dexter, Albert Gallatin.
1809-1817	James Madison (Democrat).	George Clinton, Elbridge Gerry.	Robert Smith, James Monroe.	Albert Gallatin, Geo. W. Campbell, Alex. J. Dallas.
1817-1825	James Monroe (D.)	D. D. Tompkins.	John Q. Adams.	Wm. H. Crawford.
1825-1829	John Quincy Adams (Coalition).	John C. Calhoun.	Henry Clay.	Richard Rush.
1829-1837	Andrew Jackson (Dem.)	John C. Calhoun, Martin Van Buren.	Martin Van Buren, Edward Livingston, Louis McLane, John Forsyth.	S. D. Ingham, Louis McLane, Wm. J. Duane, Roger B. Taney, Levi Woodbury.
1837-1841	Martin Van Buren (Dem.)	Richard M. Johnson.	John Forsyth.	Levi Woodbury.
1841-1845	William Henry Harrison (Whig). (Died April 4, 1841, and John Tyler became President.)	John Tyler.	Daniel Webster, Hugh S. Legaré, Abel P. Upshur, John Nelson, John C. Calhoun.	Thomas Ewing, Walter Forward, Caleb Cushing, John C. Spencer, G. M. Bibb.
1845-1849	James K. Polk (D.)	George M. Dallas.	James Buchanan.	Robert J. Walker.
1849-1853	Zachary Taylor (W.) (Died July 9, 1850, and Millard Fillmore became President.)	Millard Fillmore.	John M. Clayton, Daniel Webster, Edward Everett.	Wm. M. Meredith, Thomas Corwin.
1853-1857	Franklin Pierce (D.)	William R. King.	William L. Marcy.	James Guthrie.
1857-1861	Jas. Buchanan (D.)	John C. Breckinridge.	Lewis Cass, Jeremiah S. Black.	Howell Cobb, Philip F. Thomas, John A. Dix.
1861-1869	Ab'm Lincoln (R.) (Died Ap. 15, 1865, in 2d term, and And. Johnson became President.)	Hannibal Hamlin, Andrew Johnson.	Wm. H. Seward.	Salmon P. Chase, W. F. Fessenden, Hugh McCulloch.
1869-1877	Ulysses S. Grant (R.)	Schuyler Colfax, Henry Wilson.	E. B. Washburne, Hamilton Fish.	Geo. S. Boutwell, W. A. Richardson, B. H. Bristow, L. M. Morrill.
1877-1881	R. B. Hayes. (R.)	Wm. A. Wheeler.	Wm. M. Evarts.	John Sherman.

Present Administration—1885-1889—Grover Cleveland, Pres.; Thomas A. Hendricks, Wm. C. Endicott, Sec. of War; Wm. C. Whitney, Sec. of Navy; L. Q. C.



THEIR CABINETS.

SECRETARIES OF WAR.	SECRETARIES OF NAVY.	SECRETARIES OF INTERIOR.	POSTMASTER-GENERALS.	ATTORNEY-GENERALS.
Henry Knox, Tim. Pickering, Jas. McHenry. Jas. McHenry, Samuel Dexter, R. Griswold. H. Dearborn.	(No Navy Dept. during Washington's Administration.) George Cabot, Benjamin Stoddert. Benjamin Stoddert, Robert Smith, Jac. Crowninshield.	(The Department of the Interior was organized in 1849.)	Samuel Osgood, T. Pickering, J. Habersham. J. Habersham.	E. Randolph, Wm. Bradford, Charles Lee. Charles Lee.
William Eustis, J. Armstrong, W. H. Crawford.	Paul Hamilton, William Jones, Benj. W. Crowninshield.		Gid. Granger, Return J. Meigs.	Levi Lincoln, Robert Smith, J. Breckinridge, Cæs. A. Rodney. Cæs. A. Rodney, Wm. Pinckney, Richard Rush.
Isaac Shelby, G. Graham, J. C. Calhoun.	Benj. W. Crowninshield, Smith Thompson, John Rogers, Samuel L. Southard.		Return J. Meigs, John McLean.	Richard Rush, William Wirt.
James Barbour, P. B. Porter.	Samuel L. Southard.		John McLean.	William Wirt.
John H. Eaton, Lewis Cass.	John Branch, Levi Woodbury, M. Dickerson.		Wm. T. Barry, Amos Kendall.	J. McP. Berrien, Roger B. Taney, Benj. F. Butler.
J. R. Poinsett.	M. Dickerson, James K. Paulding.		Amos Kendall, John M. Niles.	Benj. F. Butler, Felix Grundy, H. D. Gilpin.
John Bell, John McLean, J. C. Spencer, J. M. Porter, W. Williams.	George E. Badger, Abel P. Upshur, D. Henshaw, Thomas W. Gilmer, John Y. Mason.		F. Granger, C. A. Wickliffe.	J. J. Crittenden, Hugh S. Legaré, John Nelson.
Wm. L. Marcy.	George Bancroft, John Y. Mason.		Cave Johnson.	John Y. Mason, N. Clifford, Isaac Toucey.
G. W. Crawford, W. A. Graham, J. P. Kennedy.	W. B. Preston.	Thomas Ewing, J. A. Pearce, T. McKennon, A. H. H. Stuart.	Jacob Collamer, N. K. Hall, S. D. Hubbard.	R. Johnson, J. J. Crittenden.
Jefferson Davis, John B. Floyd, Joseph Holt.	James C. Dobbin, Isaac Toucey.	R. McClellan. Jac. Thompson.	Jas. Campbell. A. V. Brown, Joseph Holt, Horatio King.	Caleb Cushing. J. S. Black, E. M. Stanton.
Sim'n Cameron. E. M. Stanton.	Gideon Welles.	Caleb B. Smith, J. P. Usher, James Harlan, O. H. Browning.	Montgom. Blair, Wm. Dennison, A. W. Randall.	Edward Bates, James Speed, H. F. Stanbery
J. M. Schofield, J. A. Rawlins, W. W. Belknap, J. D. Cameron.	Adolph E. Borie, George M. Robeson.	Jacob D. Cox, C. Delano, Zach. Chandler.	J. A. J. Cresswell, Marshall Jewell, J. N. Tyner.	E. R. Hoar, A. T. Akerman, G. H. Williams, E. Pierrepont, A. Taft.
G. W. McCrary. Alex. Ramsey.	R. W. Thompson.	Carl Schurz.	D. M. Key.	Chas. Devens.

Vice-Pres.; Thomas F. Bayard, Sec. of State; Daniel Manning, Sec. of Treasury; Lamar, Sec. of Interior; Wm. F. Vilas, Postmaster-Gen.; A. H. Garland, Attorney-Gen.



BATTLE RECORD OF THE REPUBLIC.

REVOLUTIONARY WAR.*

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		American.	British.		Am	Br.
April 19, 1775	Concord.....	Parker	Pitcairn....	Amer.	88	273
April 19, "	Lexington.....	Barrett.	Pitcairn....			
June 17, "	Bunker Hill.....	Prescott.....	Howe	Brit.	449	1054
Dec. 9, "	Great Bridge.....	Woodford.....	.....	Amer.	Nil.	62
Dec. 31, "	Quebec	Montgomery...	.....	Brit.	586	20
Feb. 27, 1776	Moore's Creek Bridge.....	Caswell.	McDonald...	Amer.	Nil	70
Mar. 17, "	Boston (surrendered).....	Washington...	Howe	Amer.	Nil.	Nil.
June 28, "	Fort Sullivan.....	Moultrie.....	Parker.	Amer.	24	225
Aug. 27, "	Long Island.....	Sullivan.....	Clinton.....	Brit.	1600	367
Sept. 16, "	Harlem Heights.....	Knowlton...	.....	Amer.	50	100
Oct. 28, "	White Plains.....	Washington...	Howe	Indec.	300	300
Nov. 16, "	Fort Washington.....	Magaw.....	Knyphausen	Brit.	2800	1000
Dec. 26, "	Trenton	Washington...	Rahl.....	Amer.	4	1040
Jan. 3, 1777	Princeton.....	Washington...	Mawhood...	Amer.	100	430
July 7, "	Hubbardton.....	Warren.....	Fraser.....	Brit.	300	183
Aug. 6, "	Oriskany.....	Herkimer.....	St. Leger....	Brit.	.....	.....
Aug. 16, "	Bennington.....	Stark	Baum	Amer.	56	807
Sept. 11, "	Brandywine.....	Washington...	Howe	Brit.	1200	590
Sept. 19, "	Bemis' Heights.....	Gates	Burgoyne...	Indec.	319	600
Sept. 20, "	Paoli	Wayne.....	Grey	Brit.	300	.....
Oct. 4, "	Germantown.....	Washington...	Howe	Brit.	1000	600
Oct. 6, "	Fts. Clinton & Montgom.	Jas. Clinton..	Sir H. Clinton	Brit.	300	140
Oct. 7, "	Bemis' Heights (2d battle)	Gates.....	Burgoyne...	Amer.	150	1700
Oct. 22, "	Fort Mercer.....	Greene.....	Donop.....	Amer.	50	400
Nov. 16, "	Fort Mifflin.....	Smith.....	Howe	Brit.	250	400
June 28, 1778	Monmouth.....	Washington...	Clinton.....	Amer.	229	300
July 4, "	Wyoming †.....	Zeb. Butler...	John Butler..	Brit.	400	.....
Aug. 29, "	Quaker Hill.....	Sullivan.....	Pigot.....	Amer.	200	220
Dec. 29, "	Savannah.....	Robt. Howe...	Campbell....	Brit.	553	24
Feb. 14, 1779	Kettle Creek.....	Pickens.....	Boyd	Amer.	38	145
Mar. 3, "	Brier Creek.....	Ashe.....	Prevost.....	Brit.	2000	16
June 20, "	Stono Ferry.....	Lincoln.....	Prevost.....	Brit.	300	270
July 16, "	Stony Point.....	Wayne.....	Johnson.....	Amer.	98	606
Aug. 18, "	Paulus' Hook.....	Lee.....	.....	Amer.	.....	159
Oct. 4-9, "	Savannah (besieged).....	Lincoln.....	Prevost.....	Brit.	\$457	120
May 12, 1780	Charleston (surrendered).....	Lincoln.....	Clinton.....	Brit.	6000	.....
June 23, "	Springfield.....	Greene.....	Knyphausen	Amer.	.....	.....
July 30, "	Rocky Mount.....	Sumter.....	.....	Brit.	13	20
Aug. 6, "	Hanging Rock.....	Sumter.....	.....	Amer.	53	.....
Aug. 16, "	Sanders' Creek.....	Gates.....	Cornwallis..	Brit.	1000	325
Oct. 7, "	King's Mountain.....	Campbell.....	Ferguson....	Amer.	20	1100
Nov. 18, "	Fish Dam Ford.....	Sumter.....	Wemyss.....	Amer.	.....	.....
Nov. 20, "	Blackstocks.....	Sumter.....	Tarleton....	Amer.	8	200
Jan. 17, 1781	Cowpens.....	Morgan.....	Tarleton....	Amer.	80	700
Mar. 15, "	Guilford C. H.....	Greene.....	Cornwallis..	Brit.	400	600
April 25, "	Hobkirk's Hill.....	Greene.....	Rawdon.....	Brit.	266	258
May, "	Ft. Ninety-Six (besieged).....	Greene.....	Cruger.....	Brit.	150	.....
May, "	Augusta (besieged).....	Lee.....	Brown.....	Amer.	51	386
July 9, "	Jamestown.....	Wayne.....	Cornwallis..	Brit.	.....	.....
Sept. 6, "	Groton.....	Ledyard.....	Arnold.....	Brit.	60	.....
Sept. 6, "	New London.....	.....	Arnold.....	Brit.	.....	.....
Sept. 8, "	Eutaw Springs.....	Greene.....	Stewart.....	Amer.	553	693
Oct. 19, "	Yorktown (surrendered).....	Washington....	Cornwallis..	Am. & Fr ⁿ ch	300	7567

* In these tables several mere skirmishes are omitted.

† Burgoyne's whole army, numbering 5,791, was surrendered on October 17.

‡ Massacre.

§ The French, under D'Estaing, lost 637.

—*—
THE WAR OF 1812.

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		American.	British.		Am	Br.
July 17, 1812	Fort Mackinaw	Van Horne.....	.....	Brit.	.....	.....
Aug. 4, "	Brownstown	Hull.....	.....	Brit.	25	.....
Aug. 16, "	Detroit (surrendered)	Van Rensselaer	Brock.....	Brit.	2340	.....
Oct. 13, "	Queenstown Heights	Allen.....	Proctor.....	Brit.	1014	.....
Jan. 18, 1813	Frenchtown	Winchester .....	.....	Amer.	67	88
Jan. 22, "	River Raisin (massacre)	Forsyth.....	Proctor.....	Brit.	946	182
Feb. 22, "	Ogdensburg	Pike.....	.....	Brit.	20	55
April 27, "	York.....	Dearborn.....	Sheaffe.....	Amer.	280	700
May 27, "	Fort George	Brown.....	Prevost.....	Amer.	121	893
May 29, "	Sackett's Harbor	Chandler.....	Vincent.....	Amer.	106	.....
June 6, "	Stony Creek	Crutchfield.....	Beckwith.....	Brit.	153	.....
June 13, "	Hampton	Beatly.....	.....	Amer.	1	200
June 22, "	Crancy Island	Boerstler.....	.....	Amer.	Nil.	200
June 23, "	Beaver Dams	Porter.....	Bisshopp.....	Brit.	535	65
July 11, "	Black Rock	Croghan.....	Proctor.....	Amer.	9	23
Aug. 2, "	Fort Stephenson	Hardy.....	.....	Amer.	8	80
Aug. 9, "	Stonington	Beasley.....	Proctor.....	Ind'ns	300	600
Aug. 30, "	Fort Mimms.....	Harrison.....	Proctor.....	Amer.	29	617
Oct. 5, "	Thames.....	Jackson.....	.....	Amer.	101	290
Nov. 9, "	Talladega	Boyd.....	Morrison.....	Brit.	338	.....
Nov. 11, "	Chrysler's Field	White.....	.....	Amer.	Nil.	317
Nov. 18, "	Hillabee Towns.....	McClure.....	Murray.....	Brit.	423	8
Dec. 19, "	Fort Niagara	Hall.....	.....	Indec.	102	75
Dec. 30, "	Black Rock	Wilkinson.....	Hancock.....	Amer.	138	56
Mar. 30, 1814	La Collé Mills.....	Mitchell.....	.....	Amer.	69	235
May 5, "	Fort Oswego.....	Brown.....	Riall.....	Amer.	300	550
July 5, "	Chippewa.....	Brown.....	Drummond.....	Amer.	743	878
July 25, "	Lundy's Lane	Gaines.....	Drummond.....	Amer.	112	1400
Aug. 1, "	Fort Erie (besieged).....	Croghan.....	.....	Brit.	74	.....
Aug. 4, "	Fort Mackinaw	Winder.....	Ross.....	Brit.	190	.....
Aug. 24, "	Bladensburg.....	McComb.....	Prevost.....	Amer.	102	1500
Sept. 11, "	Plattsburg	Strycker.....	Ross.....	Amer.	163	290
Sept. 12, "	North Point	Brown.....	.....	Amer.	295	1000
Sept. 17, "	Fort Erie	Jackson.....	Pakenham.....	Amer.	53	2053
Jan. 8, 1815	New Orleans.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

MEXICAN WAR.

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		American.	Mexican.		Am	M'x
May 3, 1846	Fort Brown.....	Brown.....	Ampudia.....	Amer.	1	.....
May 8, "	Palo Alto	Taylor.....	Arista.....	Amer.	53	600
May 9, "	Resaca de la Palma.....	Taylor.....	Arista.....	Amer.	110	1100
Sep. 21-24, "	Monterey	Taylor.....	Ampudia.....	Amer.	561	1000
Dec. 25, "	Bracito.....	Doniphan.....	De Leon.....	Amer.	7	200
Feb. 23, 1847	Buena Vista	Taylor.....	Santa Anna.....	Amer.	746	2000
Feb. 28, "	Chihuahua.....	Doniphan.....	Trias.....	Amer.	191	600
Mar. 22-26, "	Vera Cruz (siege).....	Scott.....	.....	Amer.	80	7000
April 18, "	Cerro Gordo	Scott.....	Santa Anna.....	Amer.	431	4000
Aug. 20, "	Contreras	P. F. Smith.....	Valencia.....	Am.	1015	7000
Aug. 20, "	Churubusco	Worth.....	Santa Anna.....	A.M. }	.....	.....
Sept. 8, "	El Molino del Rey.....	Worth.....	Santa Anna.....	Amer.	800	1000
Sept. 13, "	Chapultepec.....	Scott.....	Santa Anna.....	Amer.	.....	.....
Sept. 14, "	City of Mexico (surrend.)	Scott.....	Santa Anna.....	Amer.	.....	.....

✱

THE CIVIL WAR.

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		Federal.	Confederate.		Fed.	Con.
April 14, 1861	Fort Sumter	Anderson.	Beauregard.	Conf.	Nil.	Nil.
June 10, "	Big Bethel	Butler.	Magruder.	Conf.	100	8
June 17, "	Booneville.	Lyon.	Marmaduke.	Fed.	.....	.....
July 6, "	Carthage.	Sigel.	Price.	Indec	43	190
July 10, "	Rich Mountain.	Rosecrans.	Pegram.	Fed.	.....	735
July 21, "	Bull Run.	McDowell.	Beauregard.	Conf.	3051	1887
Aug. 10, "	Wilson's Creek.	Lyon.	McCulloch.	Conf.	1236	1095
Aug. 26-30, "	Hatteras Expedition.	Butler.	Barron.	Fed.	.....	700
Sept. 20, "	Lexington.	Mulligan.	Price.	Conf.	160	100
Oct. 21, "	Ball's Bluff.	Baker.	Evaus.	Conf.	1000	155
Oct. 29-Nov. 7, "	Port Royal Expedition.	T. W. Sherman.	Drayton.	Fed.	.....	.....
Nov. 7, "	Belmont.	Grant.	Polk.	Indec	400	800
Jan. 10, 1862	Middle Creek.	Garfield.	Marshall.	Fed.	.....	.....
Jan. 19, "	Mill Spring.	Thomas.	Crittenden.	Fed.	246	343
Feb. 6, "	Fort Henry.	Foote.	Tilghman.	Fed.	73	83
Feb. 7-9, "	Roanoke Island.	Burnside.	Wise.	Fed.	260	2500
Feb. 16, "	Fort Donelson.	Grant.	Floyd.	Fed.	2000	12000
Mar. 7-8, "	Pea Ridge.	Curtis.	Van Dorn.	Fed.	1351	1300
Mar. 23, "	Kearns town.	Shields.	Jackson.	Fed.	.....	.....
April 6-7, "	Shiloh.	Grant.	Johnston.	Fed.	13575	10699
April 7, "	Island No. 10.	Pope.	Makall.	Fed.	.....	6976
May 5, "	Williamsburg.	McClellan.	Johnston.	Fed.	2228	1300
May 25, "	Winchester.	Banks.	Jackson.	Conf.	904	397
May 27, "	Hanover Court-House.	McClellan.	Johnston.	Fed.	397	930
May 31-June 1, "	S'v'n Pin's or F'ir O'ks.	McClellan.	Johnston.	Fed.	5739	4232
June 9, "	Port Republic.	Shields.	Jackson.	Conf.	450	67
June 26-July 1, "	Seven Days' Battles.	McClellan.	Lee.	Ind.*	15249	19000
Aug. 5, "	Baton Rouge.	Williams.	Breckinridge.	Fed.	300	400
Aug. 9, "	Cedar Mountain.	Banks.	Jackson.	Conf.	2000	1314
Aug. 30, "	Bull Run (2d battle).	Pope.	Lee.	Conf.	18000	8400
Sept. 14, "	South Mountain.	McClellan.	Lee.	Fed.	1568	2000
Sept. 15, "	Harper's Ferry.	Miles.	Jackson.	Conf.	11583	.....
Sept. 17, "	Antietam.	McClellan.	Lee.	Indec	12469	13533
Sept. 19, 20, "	Iuka.	Rosecrans.	Price.	Fed.	782	1438
Oct. 3, "	Corinth.	Rosecrans.	Van Dorn.	Fed.	2359	9271
Oct. 8, "	Perryville.	Buell.	Bragg.	Indec	4348	2500
Dec. 7, "	Prairie Grove.	Blunt.	Hindman.	Fed.	1148	1317
Dec. 13, "	Fredericksburg.	Burnside.	Lee.	Conf.	12000	6000
Dec. 20, "	Holly Springs.	Murphy.	Van Dorn.	Conf.	1900	30
Dec. 27, 29, "	Chickasaw Bayou.	Sherman.	Pemberton.	Conf.	2000	207
D'c 31-J'n 2, 1863	Stone River, etc.	Rosecrans.	Bragg.	Fed.	8778	10000
Jan. 11, "	Arkansas Post.	McClelland.	Churchill.	Fed.	977	4640
May 1, "	Port Gibson.	McClelland.	Bowen.	Fed.	848	580
May 1-4, "	Chancellorsville.	Hooker.	Lee.	Indec	17197	13000
May 12, "	Raymond.	McPherson.	Gregg.	Fed.	442	823
May 14, "	Jackson.	McPherson.	Walker.	Fed.	265	845
May 16, "	Champion Hill.	Grant.	Pemberton.	Fed.	2457	4400
May 17, "	Big Black.	Grant.	Pemberton.	Fed.	276	1500
June 27, "	Hanover Junction.	McClellan.	Johnston.	Fed.	399	930
July 1-4, "	Gettysburg.	Meade.	Lee.	Fed.	23186	36000
July 4, "	Vicksburg (surrender).	Grant.	Pemberton.	Fed.	4236	27000
July 4, "	Helena.	Prentiss.	Holmes.	Fed.	250	1636
July 9, "	Port Hudson.	Banks.	Gardiner.	Fed.	3000	7208
July 16, "	Jackson.	Sherman.	Johnston.	Fed.	500	600
July 10-18, "	Fort Wagner.	Gillmore.	Keitt.	Conf.	1700	670
Sept. 19, 20, "	Chickamauga Creek.	Rosecrans.	Bragg.	Conf.	16351	18000
Nov. 16, "	Campbell's Station.	Burnside.	Longstreet.	Indec	300	300
Nov 17-D'c 4, "	Knoxville (besieged).	Burnside.	Longstreet.	Fed.	1000	2500

* The results of these battles varied from day to day, but on the whole the advantage was with the Federals.

THE CIVIL WAR (*Continued*).

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		Federal.	Confederate.		Fed.	Con.
Nov. 24, 1863	Lookout Mountain . . .	Grant	Bragg	Fed }		
Nov. 25, "	Missionary Ridge . . .	Grant	Bragg	Fed }	5616	8000
Feb. 20, 1864	Olustee	Seymour	Finnegan	Conf.	2000	730
April 8, "	Sabine Cross Roads . .	Banks	Smith	Con }		
April 9, "	Pleasant Hill	Banks	Smith	Fed }	5000	5000
April 12, "	Fort Pillow	Booth	Forrest	Conf.	550	80
May 5, 6, "	Wilderness	Grant	Lee	Indec	29410	8000
May 7-12, "	Spottsylvania	Grant	Lee	Indec	10381	
May 14, 15, "	Resaca	McPherson . . .	Johnston	Indec		
May 25, "	New Hope Church . . .	Sherman	Johnston	Indec		
June 1-3, "	Cold Harbor	Grant	Lee	Conf.	13153	1600
June 21, 22, "	Weldon Railroad . . .	Birney	Hill	Conf.	4000	
June 27, "	Kenesaw Mountain . .	Sherman	Johnston	Conf.	3000	442
July 20, "	Peach Tree Creek . . .	{ Sherman	Hood	Indec	1500	5000
July 22, "	Decatur					
July 20-26, "	Atlanta	Sherman	Hood	Fed.		13000
J'e 15-Jul. 30, "	Petersburg (3 ass'ts) . .	Grant	Lee	Conf.	18989	
Aug. 18-21, "	Weldon Railroad . . .	Warren	Hill	Fed.	4543	1200
Aug 31-Sep 1, "	Jonesborough	Sherman	Hardee	Fed.		
Sept. 2, "	Atlanta (captured) . .	Sherman	Hood	Fed.		
Sept. 19, "	Winchester	Sheridan	Early	Fed.	3000	8000
Sept. 22, "	Fisher's Hill	Sheridan	Early	Fed.		1100
Oct. 6, "	Allatoona Pass	Corse	French	Fed.	707	642
Oct. 19, "	Cedar Creek	Sheridan	Early	Fed.	3000	3350
Oct. 27, "	Hatcher's Run	Grant	Lee	Conf.	1500	1600
Nov. 30, "	Franklin	Schofield	Hood	Fed.	2300	5500
Dec. 14, "	Fort McAllister	Hazen		Fed.	90	240
Dec. 15, 16, "	Nashville	Thomas	Hood	Fed.		
Jan. 16, 1865	Fort Fisher (captured)	Terry	Whiting	Fed.	646	2083
Feb. 5, "	Hatcher's Run	Grant	Lee	Conf.	2000	1000
March 16, "	Avery'sborough	Sherman	Hardee	Fed.	554	550
March 18, "	Bentonville	Sherman	Johnston	Fed.	1643	1892
Mar 31-Apr 1, "	Five Forks	Sheridan	Lee	Fed.	1000	6000
April 2, "	Petersburg (evacuat'd)	Grant	Lee	Fed.		
April 8-12, "	Mobile	Canby	Taylor	Fed.	335	
April 9, "	Appomattox C. H. * . .	Grant	Lee	Fed.		28000
April 26, "	Smithfield	Sherman	Johnston	Fed.		35000

* Lee here capitulated with his whole army, and on the 26th Johnston also surrendered, while minor commands elsewhere were given up later on, and the war ended.

INDIAN WARS.

BLACK HAWK WAR.—This war began with attacks on the frontier settlers of Illinois by the Sacs, under their chief, Black Hawk. The war lasted from the middle of May, 1832, till August 2 of the same year, when it ended in the utter defeat of the Indians at the junction of the Bad Axe and Mississippi rivers. During the war twenty two white people were killed and forty wounded; the Indians lost in killed 263.

SEMINOLE WAR.—This war began toward the close of 1835, and grew out of an attempt by the Government to remove the Seminoles beyond the Mississippi. With varying fortunes it dragged along for seven years, ending with the engagement at Pilaklikaha Big Hammock on April 19, 1842. The war cost the United States many valuable lives and millions of treasure.

There have been several minor wars with Indian tribes, such as the Modoc War, in which Gen. Canby was murdered, and that with Sitting Bull's tribe, in which Gen. Custer and his entire command perished.



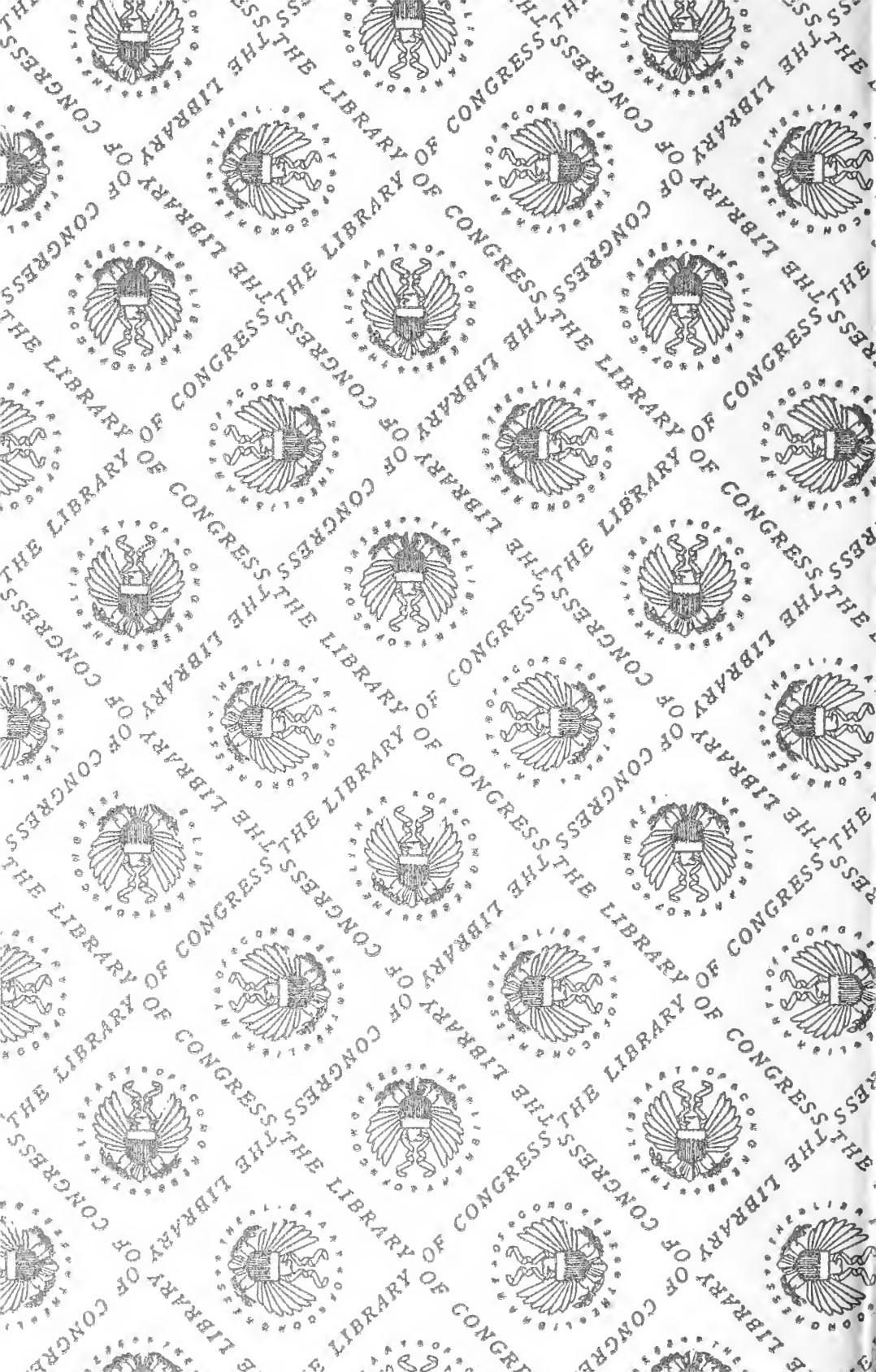
NAVAL BATTLES.

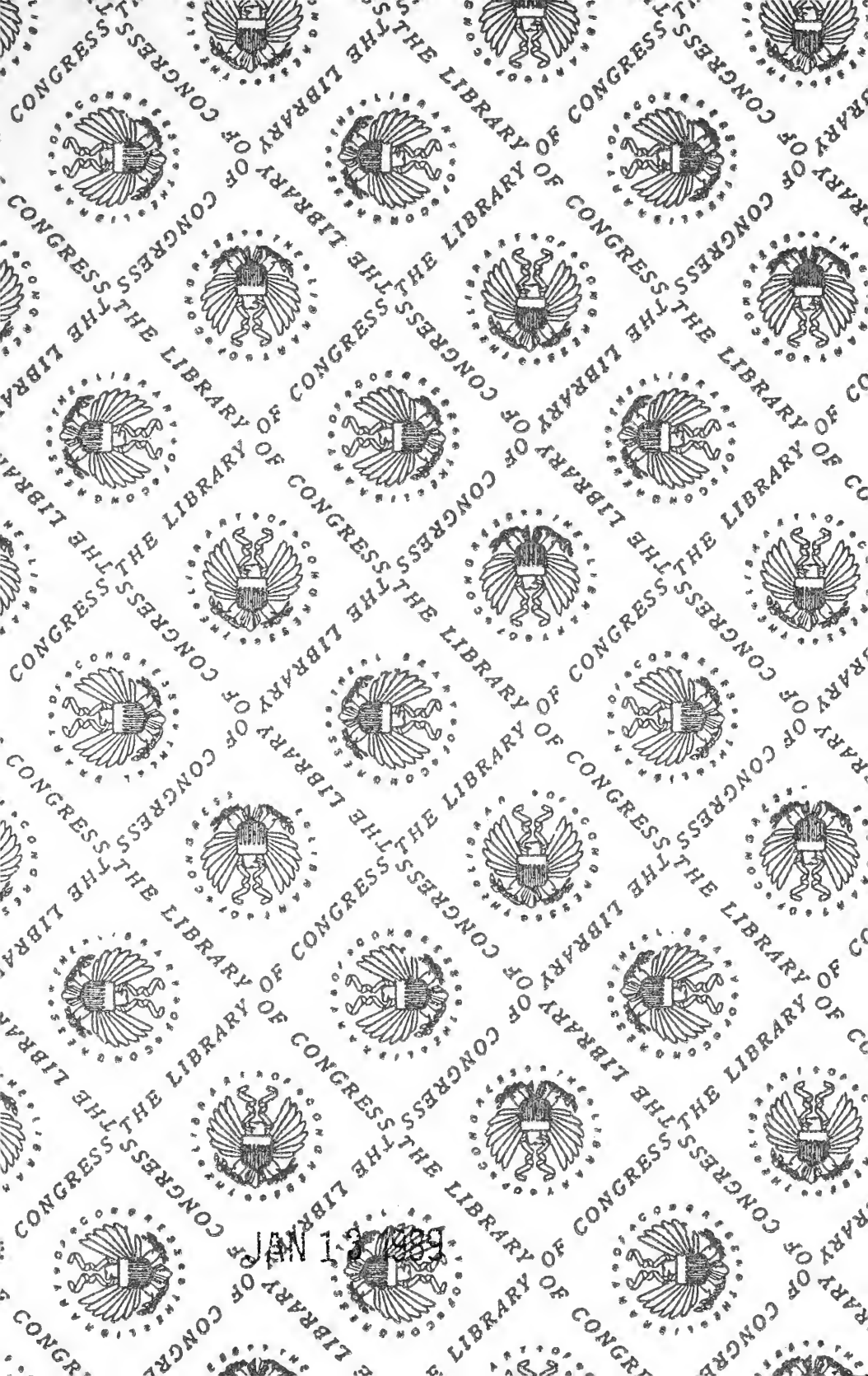
- April, 1778. Paul Jones attacks Whitehaven.
 Sept. 23, 1779. Paul Jones, in the *Bon Homme Richard*, captures British frigate *Serapis*.
 Feb., 1799. French frigate *L'Insurgente* taken by U. S. frigate *Constellation*.
 Feb., 1800. Engagement between *Constellation* and *La Vengeance*.
 Feb. 3, 1804. U. S. frigate *Philadelphia*, which had been taken by the Tripolitans, was destroyed in the harbor of Tripoli by Decatur.
 Aug., 1804. Tripoli bombarded by Commodore Preble.
 May 16, 1811. Combat between U. S. frigate *President* and British sloop *Little Belt*.
 Aug. 13, 1812. U. S. frigate *Essex* captured British sloop *Alert*.
 Aug. 13, 1812. U. S. frigate *Constitution* captured British frigate *Guerriere*.
 Oct. 18, 1812. U. S. sloop *Wasp* took British brig *Frolic*, but both vessels were captured on same afternoon by British seventy-four *Poictiers*.
 Oct. 25, 1812. U. S. frigate *United States* captured British frigate *Macedonia*.
 Dec. 29, 1812. U. S. frigate *Constitution* captured British frigate *Java*.
 Feb. 10, 1813. U. S. sloop *Hornet* captured British brig *Resolute*, and on Feb. 24 the British brig *Peacock*.
 June 1, 1813. U. S. frigate *Chesapeake* surrendered to British frigate *Shannon*.
 Aug. 14, 1813. U. S. sloop *Argus* surrendered to British sloop *Pelican*.
 Sept. 5, 1813. U. S. brig *Enterprise* captured British brig *Boxer*.
 Sept. 13, 1813. Commodore Perry captured British fleet on Lake Erie.
 Oct. 5, 1813. Commodore Chauncey captured British flotilla on Lake Ontario.
 Mar. 28, 1814. U. S. frigate *Essex* surrendered to British ships *Phoebe* and *Cherub*.
 April 20, 1814. U. S. sloop *Frolic* surrendered to British frigate *Orpheus*.
 April 29, 1814. U. S. sloop *Peacock* captured British brig *Epervier*.
 June 28, 1814. U. S. sloop *Wasp* captured British brig *Reindeer*.
 Aug. 9-12, 1814. A British fleet, under Commodore Hardy, attacked Stonington.
 Sept. 11, 1814. Commodore Macdonough's fleet on Lake Champlain captured British fleet.
 Jan. 15, 1815. U. S. frigate *President* surrendered to British frigate *Endymion*.
 Feb. 20, 1815. U. S. frigate *Constitution* captured British ships of war *Cyane* and *Levant*.
 Feb. 23, 1815. U. S. sloop *Hornet* captured British brig *Penguin*.
 March, 1817. Commodore Conner, with U. S. fleet, bombarded Vera Cruz.
 July 13, 1854. U. S. sloop *Cyane*, Captain Hollins, bombarded San Juan de Nicaragua.
 Aug. 29, 1861. Federal fleet, under Com. Stringham, captured forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C.
 Nov. 7, 1861. Federal fleet, under Com. Dupont, captured Port Royal, S. C.
 Feb. 6, 1862. Federal gunboats, under Com. Foote, captured Fort Henry, Tenn.
 Mar. 9, 1862. Engagement between Federal iron-clad *Monitor* and Confederate iron-clad *Merrimac*, after the latter had destroyed the *Cumberland* and Congress.
 April 25, 1862. Federal fleet, under Flag-Officer Farragut, after reducing Forts Jackson and St. Philip, and destroying a Confederate fleet, captured New Orleans.
 June 5, 1862. Federal fleet, under Com. Davis, destroyed Confederate fleet and captured Memphis.
 Feb. 8, 1863. Federal fleet, under Com. Goldsborough, captured forts on Roanoke Island, N. C.

NAVAL BATTLES (*Continued*).

- April 7, 1863. Federal fleet, under Com. Dupont, is repulsed in an attempt to reduce Charleston, S. C.
- April, 1863. U. S. frigate Niagara captured Confederate cruiser Georgia.
- Sept. 7, 1863. Federal fleet, under Com. Dahlgren, aided in reduction of Fort Wagner, by which the port of Charleston was entirely closed.
- March, 1864. A Federal fleet, under Rear-Admiral Porter, co-operated with a land force under General Banks, in an expedition against Shreveport, on the Red River, La. The expedition was unsuccessful, and the fleet was only saved from destruction by a dam constructed under the supervision of Lieut.-Col. Bailey.
- June 19, 1864. Federal sloop-of-war Kearsarge, Capt. Winslow, sunk Confederate steamer Alabama.
- Aug. 5, 1864. Federal fleet, under Rear-Admiral Farragut, reduced Forts Gaines and Morgan, and destroyed Confederate fleet in Mobile Bay.
- Oct., 1864. Lieut. Wm. B. Cushing, with thirteen men, destroys Confederate iron-clad Albemarle in Roanoke River.
- Jan. 16, 1865. Federal fleet, under Com. Porter, aided in capture of Fort Fisher.







JAN 18 1889

